NORTHERN TRUST CORP Form 10-O July 30, 2018 **Table of Contents**

UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM 10-Q

QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF $^{\rm x}$ 1934

For the Quarterly Period Ended June 30, 2018

OR

"TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the transition period from to

Commission File No. 001-36609

NORTHERN TRUST CORPORATION

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware 36-2723087

(State or other jurisdiction of (I.R.S. Employer incorporation or organization) Identification No.)

50 South LaSalle Street

60603 Chicago, Illinois

(Address of principal executive offices) (Zip Code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (312) 630-6000

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes x No " Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes x No "

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one): Large accelerated filerx Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer " (Do not check if a smaller reporting company) Smaller reporting company"

Emerging growth company "

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. '

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes "No x 223,281,786 Shares – \$1.66 2/3 Par Value (Shares of Common Stock Outstanding on June 30, 2018)

Table of Contents

NORTHERN TRUST CORPORATION QUARTERLY REPORT ON FORM 10-Q FOR THE QUARTERLY PERIOD ENDED JUNE 30, 2018 TABLE OF CONTENTS

| Consolidated Financial Highlights (unaudited) | Page |
|--|--------------------------------|
| Part I – Financial Information Items 2 and 3: Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations and Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk Item 1: Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) Consolidated Balance Sheets Consolidated Statements of Income | 1 3 32 32 32 33 |
| Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income Consolidated Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements Item 4: Controls and Procedures Part II – Other Information | 33 34 35 36 82 |
| Item 1: Legal Proceedings Item 2: Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds Item 6: Exhibits | 83 83 83 |
| <u>Signatures</u> i | <u>84</u> |

<u>Table of Contents</u> CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS (UNAUDITED)

| | | | 7 | Three N | Ionths 1 | End | ed Ju | ne 30, | Six Mont | Six Months Ended June 30, | | | |
|---|----------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|-------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------------|---------------------------|----------|--------|--|
| CONDENSED INC Millions) | COME STAT | TEMENTS (Ir | 1 2 | 2018 | 2017 | | % Cl | hange | (1) 2018 | 2017 | % Chang | ge (1) | |
| Noninterest Income |) | | 9 | 31,092. | 8 \$979 | .7 | 12 | % | \$2,184.8 | \$1,910.6 | 14 | % | |
| Net Interest Income | | | | 113.3 | 341.5 | | 21 | | 797.3 | 695.0 | 15 | | |
| Provision for Credi | t Losses | | 1 | 5 | (7.0 |) | N/M | | (1.5) | (8.0) | N/M | | |
| Noninterest Expens | se | | 9 | 97.4 | 937.4 | ļ | 6 | | 1,992.7 | 1,831.9 | 9 | | |
| Income before Inco | me Taxes | | 5 | 507.2 | 390.8 | 3 | 30 | | 990.9 | 781.7 | 27 | | |
| Provision for Incon | ne Taxes | | 1 | 16.8 | 122.9 |) | (5 |) | 218.9 | 237.7 | (8) |) | |
| Net Income | | | \$ | 390.4 | \$267 | .9 | 46 | % | \$772.0 | \$544.0 | 42 | % | |
| PER COMMON SI | HARE | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Net Income — Bas | ic | | \$ 1.6 | 9 \$1. | 12 51% | \$: | 3.28 | \$2.22 | 2 48% | | | | |
| — Diluted | | | 1.68 | 1.12 | 2 50 | 3. | 26 | 2.21 | 48 | | | | |
| Cash Dividends De | clared Per Co | ommon Share | 0.42 | 0.38 | 3 11 | 0.3 | 84 | 0.76 | 11 | | | | |
| Book Value — End | l of Period (E | EOP) | 42.4 | 4 40.2 | 20 6 | 42 | 2.44 | 40.20 | 6 | | | | |
| Market Price — EC |)P | | 102.3 | 89 97.2 | 21 6 | 10 |)2.89 | 97.21 | 6 | | | | |
| SELECTED BALANCE SHEET DATA (In Millions) | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SELECTED DALA | INCL STILL | I DAIA (III I | VIIIIOI | - | e 30, | D | ecem | her | | | | | |
| | | | | 20 | | | 1, 201 | | % Change (1) |) | | | |
| End of Period: | | | | | | | -, -0- | , | | | | | |
| Assets | | | | \$1 | 35,106.2 | 2 \$ | 138.5 | 90.5 | (3)% | | | | |
| Earning Assets | | | | | 1,105.2 | | , | | (4) | | | | |
| Deposits | | | | | 5,524.9 | | 12,39 | | (5) | | | | |
| Stockholders' Equi | ty | | | | 357.6 | | 0,216 | | 1 | | | | |
| 1 | • | ths Ended Jur | ne 30, | - | Months | | | | 0, | | | | |
| | | | % | | | | | q | % | | | | |
| | 2018 | 2017 | Chang | ge 201 | 8 | 20 |)17 | (| Change | | | | |
| | | | (1) | | | | | (| 1) | | | | |
| Average Balances: | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Assets | \$123,866.7 | \$118,400.7 | 5 % | \$12 | 4,178.3 | \$ \$1 | 117,4 | 43.8 6 | % | | | | |
| Earning Assets | 114,414.6 | 109,906.5 | 4 | 115 | ,046.9 | 10 | 9,431 | 1.8 5 | i | | | | |
| Deposits | 95,630.8 | 96,739.2 | (1) | 96, | 907.1 | 95 | 5,841. | 4 1 | | | | | |
| Stockholders' Equi | ty10,202.1 | 9,976.0 | 2 | | 170.1 | | 884.2 | | | | | | |
| CLIENT ASSETS | (In Billions) | Jun 201 | e 30, .8 | Dece: 31, 20 | mber _% | Ch | nange | (1) | | | | | |
| Assets Under Custo | ody/Administ | | | | | _ | % | | | | | | |
| Assets Under Custo | • | | 01.9 | 8,084 | | _ | | | | | | | |
| Assets Under Mana | • | | 48.9 | 1,161 | | |) | | | | | | |
| Percentage calcu | - | , | | , | , | | e rour | nded a | mounts prese | ented in the | Consolid | ated | |

⁽¹⁾ Percentage calculations are based on actual balances rather than the rounded amounts presented in the Consolidated Financial Highlights.

⁽²⁾ For the purposes of disclosing Assets Under Custody/Administration, to the extent that both custody and administration services are provided, the value of the assets is included only once.

Table of Contents

SELECTED RATIOS AND METRICS

| | | Three I | Months | Six Months | | | |
|----------------------------|--------|-----------------|---------|-------------------------------|-----------|-----|--|
| | | Ended | June | Ended | June | | |
| | | 30, | | 30, | | | |
| | | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 | | |
| Financial Ratios: | | | | | | | |
| Return on Average Common l | Equity | 16.5% | 11.6% | 16.3% | 11.6% | | |
| Return on Average Assets | 1 0 | 1.26 | 0.91 | 1.25 | 0.93 | | |
| Dividend Payout Ratio | | 25.0 | 33.9 | 25.8 | 34.4 | | |
| Net Interest Margin (1) | | 1.48 | 1.28 | 1.43 | 1.31 | | |
| C | June 3 | 0, 2018 | } | Decem | ber 31, 2 | 017 | |
| | Advan | c St and | ardized | d Advanc Sd andardized | | | |
| | Appro | acAppro | ach | Approa | (Approac | ch | |
| Capital Ratios: | | | | | | | |
| Northern Trust Corporation | | | | | | | |
| Common Equity Tier 1 | 13.3% | 12.4 | % | 13.5% | 12.6 | % | |
| Tier 1 | 14.6 | 13.6 | | 14.8 | 13.8 | | |
| Total | 16.5 | 15.6 | | 16.7 | 15.8 | | |
| Tier 1 Leverage | 7.7 | 7.7 | | 7.8 | 7.8 | | |
| Supplementary Leverage | 6.8 | N/A | | 6.8 | N/A | | |
| The Northern Trust Company | | | | | | | |
| Common Equity Tier 1 | 13.8% | 12.6 | % | 13.7% | 12.6 | % | |
| Tier 1 | 13.8 | 12.6 | | 13.7 | 12.6 | | |
| Total | 15.4 | 14.3 | | 15.4 | 14.3 | | |
| Tier 1 Leverage | 7.1 | 7.1 | | 7.0 | 7.0 | | |
| Supplementary Leverage | 6.2 | N/A | | 6.1 | N/A | | |

Net interest margin is presented on a fully taxable equivalent (FTE) basis, a non-generally accepted accounting principle (GAAP) financial measure that facilitates the analysis of asset yields. The net interest margin on a GAAP basis and a reconciliation of net interest income on a GAAP basis to net interest income on an FTE basis are presented on page 28.

Table of Contents

PART I - FINANCIAL INFORMATION

Items 2. and 3. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations and Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk

SECOND QUARTER CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

General

Northern Trust Corporation (the Corporation) is a financial holding company that is a leading provider of wealth management, asset servicing, asset management and banking solutions to corporations, institutions, families and individuals. The Corporation focuses on managing and servicing client assets through its two client-focused reporting segments: Corporate & Institutional Services (C&IS) and Wealth Management. Asset management and related services are provided to C&IS and Wealth Management clients primarily by the Asset Management business. Except where the context requires otherwise, the terms "Northern Trust," "we," "us," "our" or similar terms mean the Corporation and its subsidiaries on a consolidated basis.

The following should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements and related footnotes included in this report. Investors also should read the section entitled "Forward-Looking Statements."

Overview

Net income per diluted common share was \$1.68 in the current quarter, up from \$1.12 in the second quarter of 2017. Net income was \$390.4 million in the current quarter as compared to \$267.9 million in the prior-year quarter. Annualized return on average common equity was 16.5% in the current quarter and 11.6% in the prior-year quarter. The annualized return on average assets was 1.26% in the current quarter as compared to 0.91% in the prior-year quarter.

Revenue of \$1.51 billion in the current quarter was up \$184.9 million, or 14%, from \$1.32 billion in the prior-year quarter.

Noninterest income increased \$113.1 million, or 12%, to \$1.09 billion from \$979.7 million in the prior-year quarter, reflecting higher trust, investment and other servicing fees and foreign exchange trading income, partially offset by lower other operating income.

Net interest income increased \$71.8 million, or 21%, to \$413.3 million in the current quarter as compared to \$341.5 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily resulting from a higher net interest margin and an increase in earning assets.

The provision for credit losses was \$1.5 million in the current quarter, as compared to a provision credit of \$7.0 million in the prior-year quarter.

Noninterest expense totaled \$997.4 million in the current quarter, up \$60.0 million, or 6%, from \$937.4 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily attributable to higher compensation, outside services, employee benefits, and equipment and software expense, partially offset by lower other operating expense.

The provision for income taxes in the current quarter totaled \$116.8 million, representing an effective tax rate of 23.0%. The provision for income taxes in the prior-year quarter totaled \$122.9 million, representing an effective tax rate of 31.4%.

Table of Contents

SECOND OUARTER CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Noninterest Income

The components of noninterest income are provided below.

Table 1: Noninterest Income

| Noninterest Income | Three Months | | | | | | | | |
|--|--------------|---------|---------|------|---|--|--|--|--|
| Noninterest income | Ended Ju | ne 30, | | | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Change | | | | | | |
| Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees | \$942.9 | \$848.2 | \$94.7 | 11 | % | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Trading Income | 78.9 | 49.9 | 29.0 | 58 | | | | | |
| Treasury Management Fees | 13.5 | 14.9 | (1.4) | (10) | 1 | | | | |
| Security Commissions and Trading Income | 26.1 | 24.1 | 2.0 | 8 | | | | | |
| Other Operating Income | 31.4 | 43.0 | (11.6) | (27) | 1 | | | | |
| Investment Security (Losses) Gains, net | _ | (0.4) | 0.4 | N/M | | | | | |
| Total Noninterest Income | \$1,092.8 | \$979.7 | \$113.1 | 12 | % | | | | |

Trust, investment and other servicing fees are based primarily on the market value of assets held in custody, managed or serviced; the volume of transactions; securities lending volume and spreads; and fees for other services rendered. Certain market value calculations on which fees are based are performed on a monthly or quarterly basis in arrears. For a further discussion of trust, investment and other servicing fees and how they are derived, refer to the "Reporting Segments" section.

When considering the impact of markets on the Corporation's results, the following tables present selected market indices and the percentage changes year over year.

Table 2: Equity Market Indices

| Table 2: Equity Market Indice | es | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------|--------------|-------|------|----------------|-------|------|------|
| | Daily | Averag | ges | | Period | l-End | | |
| | Three June 3 | Month 30, | ıs Er | ided | As of June 30, | | | |
| | 2018 | 2017 | Cha | nge | 2018 | 2017 | Cha | inge |
| S&P 500 | 2,702 | 2,397 | 13 | % | 2,718 | 2,423 | 12 | % |
| MSCI EAFE (U.S. dollars) | 2,018 | 1,856 | 9 | | 1,959 | 1,883 | 4 | |
| MSCI EAFE (local currency) | 1,144 | 1,099 | 4 | | 1,132 | 1,096 | 3 | |
| Table 3: Fixed Income Marke | t Indic | es | | | | | | |
| | | | | As | of Jun | e 30, | | |
| | | | | 201 | 18 201 | 17 Ch | ange | |
| Barclays Capital U.S. Aggreg | ate Bo | nd Inde | ex | 2,0 | 13 2,0 | 21 — | % | |

Barclays Capital Global Aggregate Bond Index 478 471 1

Assets under custody/administration (AUC/A) and assets under management form the primary drivers of our trust, investment and other servicing fees. For the purposes of disclosing AUC/A, to the extent that both custody and administration services are provided, the value of the assets is included only once. The following table presents AUC/A by reporting segment.

Table 4: Assets Under Custody / Administration

| Assets Under Custody / Administration | June 30, | March 31, | June 30, | Char | ige | Change | • |
|---|------------|------------|-----------|------|---------|--------|-------|
| (\$ In Billions) | 2018 | 2018 | 2017 | Q2-1 | 8/Q1-18 | Q2-18/ | Q2-17 |
| Corporate & Institutional | \$10,051.9 | \$10,131.7 | \$8,690.8 | (1 |)% | 16 | % |
| Wealth Management | 660.6 | 654.0 | 603.4 | 1 | | 9 | |
| Total Assets Under Custody / Administration | \$10,712.5 | \$10,785.7 | \$9,294.2 | (1 |)% | 15 | % |

Table of Contents

SECOND OUARTER CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Noninterest Income (continued)

The following table presents Northern Trust's assets under custody, a component of AUC/A, by reporting segment. Table 5: Assets Under Custody

| Assets Under Custody | June 30, | March | June 30, | Change | Change | |
|----------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|---|
| (\$ In Billions) | 2018 | 31, 2018 | 2017 | Q2-18/Q1-18 | Q2-18/Q2-17 | 7 |
| Corporate & Institutional | \$7,451.1 | \$7,466.5 | \$6,786.3 | % | 10 % | |
| Wealth Management | 650.8 | 645.2 | 593.3 | 1 | 10 | |
| Total Assets Under Custody | \$8,101.9 | \$8,111.7 | \$7,379.6 | % | 10 % | |

The 10% increase in consolidated assets under custody from \$7.38 trillion as of June 30, 2017 to \$8.10 trillion as of June 30, 2018 primarily reflected the impact of favorable markets and new business.

The following table presents the allocation of Northern Trust's custodied assets by reporting segment.

Table 6: Allocation of Assets Under Custody

| | June 30, 2018 | | | March 31, 2018 | | | June 30, 2017 | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-----|-------|----------------|-----|-------|---------------|-----|-------|
| Assets Under Custody | C&IS | SWM | Total | C&IS | SWM | Total | C&IS | SWM | Total |
| Equities | 45% | 58% | 46% | 45% | 58% | 46% | 45% | 56% | 46% |
| Fixed Income | 38 | 18 | 36 | 37 | 18 | 36 | 38 | 20 | 37 |
| Cash and Other Assets | 15 | 24 | 16 | 15 | 24 | 16 | 15 | 24 | 15 |
| Securities Lending Collateral | 2 | | 2 | 3 | | 2 | 2 | | 2 |

The following table presents Northern Trust's assets under management by reporting segment.

Table 7: Assets Under Management

| Assets Under Management | June 30, | March | June 30, | Chan | ge | Change | 2 |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------|---------|--------|-------|
| (\$ In Billions) | 2018 | 31, 2018 | 2017 | Q2-1 | 8/Q1-18 | Q2-18/ | Q2-17 |
| Corporate & Institutional | \$862.1 | \$878.3 | \$762.7 | (2 |)% | 13 | % |
| Wealth Management | 286.8 | 287.4 | 266.1 | _ | | 8 | |
| Total Assets Under Management | \$1,148.9 | \$1,165.7 | \$1,028.8 | (1 |)% | 12 | % |

The 12% increase in consolidated assets under management from \$1.03 trillion at June 30, 2017 to \$1.15 trillion as of June 30, 2018 was primarily due to favorable markets and net inflows in securities lending collateral and cash.

The following table presents Northern Trust's assets under management by investment type.

Table 8: Assets Under Management by Investment Type

| (\$ In Billions) | June 30, | March 31, | June 30, | |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|--|
| (\$ III BIIIIOIIS) | 2018 | 2018 | 2017 | |
| Equities | \$587.8 | \$583.7 | \$531.3 | |
| Fixed Income | 177.4 | 177.7 | 169.5 | |
| Cash and Other Assets | 209.9 | 216.8 | 197.0 | |
| Securities Lending Collateral | 173.8 | 187.5 | 131.0 | |
| Total Assets Under Management | \$1,148.9 | \$1,165.7 | \$1,028.8 | |

Table of Contents

SECOND QUARTER CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Noninterest Income (continued)

The following table presents the allocation of Northern Trust's assets under management by reporting segment. Table 9: Allocation of Assets Under Management

| | June 30, 2018 | | | March 31, 2018 | | | June 30, 2017 | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-----|-------|----------------|-----|-------|---------------|-----|-------|
| Assets Under Management | C&IS | SWM | Total | C&IS | SWM | Total | C&IS | SWM | Total |
| Equities | 51% | 52% | 51 % | 50% | 52% | 50 % | 52% | 49% | 52 % |
| Fixed Income | 12 | 25 | 16 | 12 | 25 | 15 | 13 | 26 | 16 |
| Cash and Other Assets | 17 | 23 | 18 | 17 | 23 | 19 | 18 | 25 | 19 |
| Securities Lending Collateral | 20 | | 15 | 21 | | 16 | 17 | | 13 |

The following table presents activity in consolidated assets under management by investment type.

Table 10: Activity in Consolidated Assets Under Management by Investment Type

| Table 10. Activity in Consona | | onths End | • | by investment | Type | |
|-------------------------------|-----------|--------------|------------|----------------|--------------|---|
| | | | | 31,September 3 | 20 Juna 20 | |
| (\$ In Billions) | 2018 | 2018 | 2017 | 2017 | 2017 | |
| Designing Delenge of AUM | | | | \$ 1,028.8 | \$1,001.3 | |
| Beginning Balance of AUM | \$1,103.7 | \$1,101.0 | \$ 1,125.1 | \$ 1,020.0 | \$1,001.3 | |
| Inflows by Investment Type | 44.7 | 44.2 | 63.0 | 51.2 | 36.3 | |
| Equity Fixed Income | 17.5 | 44.2 17.4 | 23.0 | 19.8 | 30.3 11.6 | |
| | | | | | | |
| Cash & Other Assets | 124.2 | 114.4 | 116.3 | 101.6 | 98.2 | |
| Securities Lending Collateral | 22.4 | 68.1 | 32.4 | 45.5 | 24.9 | |
| Total Inflows | 208.8 | 244.1 | 234.7 | 218.1 | 171.0 | |
| Outflows by Investment Type | | | | | | |
| Equity | (42.4 |)(47.8 |)(67.7 |) (41.0 |) (38.6 |) |
| Fixed Income | (20.4 |)(24.0 |)(20.7 |) (13.0 | (10.5) |) |
| Cash & Other Assets | • |)(117.4 |)(111.8 |) (83.0 |) (99.5 |) |
| Securities Lending Collateral | * |)(48.3 |)(26.8 |) (14.4 |) (17.5 |) |
| Total Outflows | (229.5 |)(237.5 |)(227.0 |) (151.4 |) (166.1 |) |
| Net Inflows / (Outflows) | (20.7 |)6.6 | 7.7 | 66.7 | 4.9 | |
| Market Performance, Currency | / | | | | | |
| & Other | | | | | | |
| Market Performance & Other | 11.5 | (4.6 |)27.9 | 26.6 | 18.2 | |
| Currency | (7.6 |)2.7 | 0.3 | 3.0 | 4.4 | |
| Total Market Performance, | | , | | • • • | 22.6 | |
| Currency & Other | 3.9 | (1.9 |)28.2 | 29.6 | 22.6 | |
| Ending Balance of AUM | \$1,148.9 | \$1,165.7 | \$ 1,161.0 | \$ 1,125.1 | \$1,028.8 | |
| - | | | | | | |

Foreign exchange trading income totaled \$78.9 million in the current quarter, up \$29.0 million, or 58%, compared to \$49.9 million in the prior-year quarter. The increase was primarily due to higher client volumes and increased foreign exchange swap activity in Treasury as compared to the prior-year quarter.

Table of Contents

SECOND QUARTER CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Noninterest Income (continued)

Other operating income totaled \$31.4 million in the current quarter, down \$11.6 million, or 27%, compared to \$43.0 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily due to non-recurring net gains on hedging activity recognized in the prior-year quarter and a valuation adjustment to existing swap agreements related to Visa Inc. Class B common shares recorded in other income in the current quarter. The components of other operating income are provided below.

Table 11: Other Operating Income

| | Three | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|--------|----------|-----|-----|--|--|--|--|--|
| Other Operating Income | Month | ıs | | | | | | | | |
| Other Operating income | Ended | June | | | | | | | | |
| | 30, | | | | | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Change | • | | | | | | |
| Loan Service Fees | \$12.7 | \$13.3 | \$(0.6) | (4 |)% | | | | | |
| Banking Service Fees | 11.7 | 12.6 | (0.9) | (7 |) | | | | | |
| Other Income | 7.0 | 17.1 | (10.1) | (59 | 9) | | | | | |
| Total Other Operating Income | \$31.4 | \$43.0 | \$(11.6) | (27 | 7)% | | | | | |

<u>Table of Contents</u> SECOND QUARTER CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued) Net Interest Income

The following table presents an analysis of average balances and interest rate changes affecting net interest income. Table 12: Average Consolidated Balance Sheets with Analysis of Net Interest Income

| | NORTHERN TRUST CORPORATION SECOND QUARTER | | | | | | | |
|---|--|----------------------|----------|-------------|-----------------|----------|--|--|
| (Interest and Rate on a Fully Taxable Equivalent Basis) | 2018 | | | 2017 | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | Interes | t Average Balance | Rate (5) | Interest | Average Balance | Rate (5) | | |
| Average Earning Assets | | | | | | | | |
| Federal Reserve and Other Central Bank Deposits | \$48.8 | \$24,512.8 | 0.80 % | | \$22,570.0 | 0.60 % | | |
| Interest-Bearing Due from and Deposits with Banks (1) | 18.3 | 6,556.9 | 1.12 | 14.1 | 7,653.9 | 0.74 | | |
| Federal Funds Sold and Securities Purchased under Agreements to Resell Securities | 8.2 | 1,417.1 | 2.33 | 7.4 | 2,059.4 | 1.45 | | |
| U.S. Government | 26.7 | 5,718.3 | 1.87 | 22.0 | 6,423.8 | 1.37 | | |
| Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | 3.6 | 785.4 | 1.83 | 3.4 | 928.8 | 1.46 | | |
| Government Sponsored Agency | 109.3 | 20,215.0 | 2.17 | 61.5 | 17,888.7 | 1.38 | | |
| Other (2) | 88.6 | 22,973.7 | 1.55 | 56.9 | 18,490.5 | 1.23 | | |
| Total Securities | 228.2 | 49,692.4 | 1.84 | 143.8 | 43,731.8 | 1.32 | | |
| Loans and Leases (3) | 273.5 | 32,235.4 | 3.40 | 227.0 | 33,891.4 | 2.69 | | |
| Total Earning Assets | 577.0 | 114,414.6 | 2.02 | 426.1 | 109,906.5 | 1.56 | | |
| Allowance for Credit Losses Assigned to Loans and | 377.0 | | | .20.1 | | | | |
| Leases | _ | (126.4) | | | (162.3) | | | |
| Cash and Due from Banks and Other Central Bank | | 2,440.5 | | | 2,701.1 | | | |
| Deposits ⁽⁴⁾ | | | | | | | | |
| Buildings and Equipment | _ | 440.0 | | _ | 465.2 | _ | | |
| Client Security Settlement Receivables | _ | 942.1 | | _ | 829.0 | _ | | |
| Goodwill | _ | 615.9 | _ | _ | 521.6 | | | |
| Other Assets | _ | 5,140.0 | _ | _ | 4,139.6 | _ | | |
| Total Assets | \$ — | \$123,866.7 | — % | \$ — | \$118,400.7 | — % | | |
| Average Source of Funds | | | | | | | | |
| Deposits | | | | | | | | |
| Savings, Money Market and Other | \$17.0 | \$15,565.0 | 0.44 % | | \$15,236.1 | 0.12 % | | |
| Savings Certificates and Other Time | 2.0 | 896.6 | 0.87 | 2.4 | 1,312.7 | 0.72 | | |
| Non-U.S. Offices — Interest-Bearing | 58.3 | 57,684.5 | 0.41 | 33.9 | 56,672.3 | 0.24 | | |
| Total Interest-Bearing Deposits | 77.3 | 74,146.1 | 0.42 | 41.0 | 73,221.1 | 0.22 | | |
| Short-Term Borrowings | 51.5 | 11,336.2 | 1.82 | 12.2 | 5,412.0 | 0.91 | | |
| Senior Notes | 11.7 | 1,497.6 | 3.14 | 11.8 | 1,496.9 | 3.14 | | |
| Long-Term Debt | 12.0 | 1,410.8 | 3.41 | 9.6 | 1,536.1 | 2.51 | | |
| Floating Rate Capital Debt | 1.9 | 277.5 | 2.80 | 1.1 | 277.4 | 1.70 | | |
| Total Interest-Related Funds | 154.4 | 88,668.2 | 0.70 | 75.7 | 81,943.5 | 0.37 | | |
| Interest Rate Spread | _ | | 1.32 | _ | | 1.19 | | |
| Demand and Other Noninterest-Bearing Deposits | _ | 21,484.7 | _ | | 23,518.1 | | | |
| Other Liabilities | _ | 3,511.7 | _ | | 2,963.1 | | | |
| Stockholders' Equity | _ | 10,202.1 | | | 9,976.0 | — ~ | | |
| Total Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity | \$— ************************************ | \$123,866.7 | | \$- | \$118,400.7 | — % | | |
| Net Interest Income/Margin (FTE Adjusted) | \$422.6 | \$ — | 1.48 % | \$350.4 | \$ — | 1.28 % | | |

Net Interest Income/Margin (Unadjusted) \$413.3 \$— 1.45 % \$341.5 \$— 1.25 %

Table of Contents

SECOND OUARTER CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Net Interest Income (continued)

ANALYSIS OF NET INTEREST INCOME CHANGES DUE TO VOLUME AND RATE

Three Months Ended June 30, 2018/2017 Change Due To

Average Rate Balance (In Millions) Total

Earning Assets (FTE) \$22.6 \$128.3 \$150.9 **Interest-Related Funds** 18.1 60.6 78.7 Net Interest Income (FTE) \$4.5 \$67.7 \$72.2

- (1) Interest-Bearing Due from and Deposits with Banks includes the interest-bearing component of Cash and Due from Banks and Interest-Bearing Deposits with Banks as presented on the consolidated balance sheets.
- Other securities include certain community development investments and Federal Home Loan Bank and Federal Reserve stock, which are classified in other assets in the consolidated balance sheets as of June 30, 2018 and 2017.
- (3) Average balances include nonaccrual loans. Lease financing receivable balances are reduced by deferred income.
- Cash and Due from Banks and Other Central Bank Deposits includes the noninterest-bearing component of Federal Reserve and Other Central Bank Deposits as presented on the consolidated balance sheets.
- Rate calculations are based on actual balances rather than the rounded amounts presented in the Average (5) Consolidated Balance St. (1) A state of the consolidated Balance St. (2) A state of the consolidated Balance St. (3) A state of the consolidated Balance St. (4) A state of the consolidated Balance St. (5) Consolidated Balance St. (6) A state of the consolidated Balance St. (6) A state of the consolidated Balance St. (6) A state of the consolidated Balance St. (7) A state of the consolidated Balance St. (7) A state of the consolidated Balance St. (8) A state of the consolidated Bala Consolidated Balance Sheets with Analysis of Net Interest Income.

Net Interest Income (FTE Adjusted), a non-generally accepted accounting principle (GAAP) financial measure, includes adjustments to a fully taxable equivalent basis for loans and securities. Such adjustments are based on a blended federal and state tax rate of 24.8% and 37.8% for the three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017,

Notes: respectively. Total taxable equivalent interest adjustments amounted to \$9.3 million and \$8.9 million for the three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively. A reconciliation of net interest income and net interest margin on a GAAP basis to net interest income and net interest margin on an FTE basis (each of which is a non-GAAP financial measure) is provided on page 28.

Interest revenue on cash collateral positions is reported above within interest-bearing deposits with banks and within loans and leases. Interest expense on cash collateral positions is reported above within non-U.S. offices interest-bearing deposits. Related cash collateral received from and deposited with derivative counterparties is recorded net of the associated derivative contract within other assets and other liabilities, respectively. Net interest income is defined as the total of interest income and amortized fees on earning assets, less interest expense on deposits and borrowed funds, adjusted for the impact of interest-related hedging activity. Net interest income on a fully taxable equivalent (FTE) basis totaled \$422.6 million in the current quarter, up \$72.2 million, or 21%, compared to \$350.4 million in the prior-year quarter. The increase was primarily the result of a higher net interest margin and an increase in earning assets. Average earning assets for the current quarter were \$114.4 billion, up \$4.5 billion, or 4%, from \$109.9 billion in the prior-year quarter, primarily resulting from higher levels of securities, partially offset by reductions in loans and leases. Earning asset growth was funded primarily by higher levels of borrowed funds and interest-bearing deposits, partially offset by lower demand and other noninterest-bearing deposits.

The net interest margin on an FTE basis increased to 1.48% in the current quarter from 1.28% in the prior-year quarter, primarily due to higher short-term interest rates, partially offset by a balance sheet mix shift. When adjusted to an FTE basis, yields on taxable, nontaxable, and partially taxable assets are comparable; however, the adjustment to an FTE basis has no impact on net income. A reconciliation of net interest income and net interest margin on a GAAP basis to net interest income and net interest margin on an FTE basis (each of which is a

non-GAAP financial measure) is provided on page 28.

Federal Reserve and other central bank deposits averaged \$24.5 billion, up \$1.9 billion, or 9%, from \$22.6 billion in the prior-year quarter. Average securities were \$49.7 billion, up \$6.0 billion, or 14%, from \$43.7 billion in the prior-year quarter and include certain community development investments, Federal Home Loan Bank stock, and Federal Reserve stock of \$426.1 million, \$226.0 million and \$53.7 million, respectively, which are recorded in other assets in the consolidated balance sheets.

Loans and leases averaged \$32.2 billion, down \$1.7 billion, or 5%, from \$33.9 billion in the prior-year quarter, primarily reflecting lower levels of residential real estate, commercial real estate, and commercial and institutional loans, partially offset by increases in private client loans. Residential real estate loans averaged \$7.0 billion, down \$1.0 billion, or 13%, from \$8.0 billion for the prior-year quarter. Commercial real estate loans averaged \$3.4 billion, down \$463.9 million, or 12%, from \$3.8 billion for the prior-year quarter. Commercial and institutional loans averaged \$9.2 billion, down \$316.7 million, or 3%, from \$9.5 billion for the prior-year quarter. Private client loans averaged \$10.4 billion, up \$102.6 million, or 1%, from \$10.3 billion for the prior-year quarter.

Table of Contents

SECOND QUARTER CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Net Interest Income (continued)

Northern Trust utilizes a diverse mix of funding sources. Total interest-bearing deposits averaged \$74.1 billion in the current quarter, compared to \$73.2 billion in the prior-year quarter, an increase of \$925.0 million. Other interest-bearing funds averaged \$14.5 billion in the current quarter, compared to \$8.7 billion in the prior-year quarter. The balances within short-term borrowing classifications vary based on funding requirements and strategies, interest rate levels, changes in the volume of lower-cost deposit sources, and the availability of collateral to secure these borrowings. Average net noninterest-related funds decreased \$2.3 billion, or 8%, to \$25.7 billion in the current quarter from \$28.0 billion in the prior-year quarter, primarily resulting from lower levels of demand and other noninterest-bearing deposits.

Provision for Credit Losses

The provision for credit losses was \$1.5 million in the current quarter, as compared to a provision credit of \$7.0 million in the prior-year quarter. The provision in the current quarter was primarily driven by an increase in the specific reserve attributable to the commercial and institutional and commercial real estate portfolios, partially offset by a reduction in the specific reserve attributable to the residential real estate portfolio. Net charge-offs in the current quarter were \$0.1 million, resulting from charge-offs of \$2.2 million and recoveries of \$2.1 million. The prior-year quarter included \$3.2 million of net charge-offs, reflecting \$5.0 million of charge-offs and \$1.8 million of recoveries. Nonperforming assets of \$132.2 million decreased 21% from \$166.7 million at the end of the prior-year quarter. Residential real estate, commercial and institutional, and commercial real estate loans accounted for 84%, 11%, and 5%, respectively, of total nonperforming loans and leases at June 30, 2018. For additional discussion of the provision and allowance for credit losses, refer to the "Asset Quality" section beginning on page 23.

Noninterest Expense

The components of noninterest expense are provided below.

Table 13: Noninterest Expense

| Noninterest Expense | Three Months | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|--------------|----------|--------|-----|--|--|--|--|--|
| Noninterest Expense | Ended J | June 30, | | | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Change | | | | | | |
| Compensation | \$454.7 | \$432.5 | \$22.2 | 5 % | | | | | |
| Employee Benefits | 88.8 | 75.6 | 13.2 | 17 | | | | | |
| Outside Services | 185.6 | 167.0 | 18.6 | 11 | | | | | |
| Equipment and Software | 144.2 | 133.7 | 10.5 | 8 | | | | | |
| Occupancy | 48.8 | 46.3 | 2.5 | 6 | | | | | |
| Other Operating Expense | 75.3 | 82.3 | (7.0) | (8) | | | | | |
| Total Noninterest Expense | \$997.4 | \$937.4 | \$60.0 | 6 % | | | | | |

Compensation expense, the largest component of noninterest expense, totaled \$454.7 million in the current quarter, up \$22.2 million, or 5%, compared to \$432.5 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily reflecting higher cash-based incentive accruals, increased salary expense, and higher long-term performance-based incentive expense, partially offset by lower severance charges. Compensation expense in the current quarter included severance-related and restructuring charges of \$3.9 million, as compared to \$19.5 million in the prior-year quarter. The increase in salary expense was driven by base pay adjustments and staff growth including the acquisition of UBS Asset Management's fund administration units in Luxembourg and Switzerland (the UBS acquisition).

Employee benefits expense totaled \$88.8 million in the current quarter, up \$13.2 million, or 17%, compared to \$75.6 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily due to higher medical costs and retirement plan expenses. Employee benefits expense in the current quarter included a benefit of \$0.2 million from severance-related charges, as compared to an expense of \$2.5 million in the prior-year quarter.

Outside services expense totaled \$185.6 million in the current quarter, up \$18.6 million, or 11%, compared to \$167.0 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily reflecting a change in presentation of third-party advisor costs resulting from the adoption of the new revenue recognition accounting standard as of January 1, 2018, higher technical services

costs, increased costs associated with the UBS acquisition, and higher sub-custodian expenses, partially offset by lower sub-advisor costs and consulting services. There is a corresponding increase to trust, investment and other servicing fees as a result of the adoption of the new revenue recognition accounting standard. The current quarter included severance-related and restructuring charges of \$2.9 million, as compared to \$0.8 million in the prior-year quarter.

Table of Contents

SECOND OUARTER CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Noninterest Expense (continued)

Equipment and software expense totaled \$144.2 million in the current quarter, up \$10.5 million, or 8%, compared to \$133.7 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily reflecting increased software amortization.

Other operating expense totaled \$75.3 million in the current quarter, down 8% from \$82.3 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily reflecting lower charges associated with account servicing activities, partially offset by higher costs associated with the UBS acquisition.

The components of other operating expense are provided below.

Table 14: Other Operating Expense

| | Three | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------------|
| Other Operating Evpense | Month | ıs | |
| Other Operating Expense | Ended | June | |
| | 30, | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Change |
| Business Promotion | \$21.9 | \$19.8 | \$2.1 10 % |
| Staff Related | 10.3 | 12.8 | (2.5) (19) |
| FDIC Insurance Premiums | 7.6 | 8.5 | (0.9)(11) |
| Other Intangibles Amortization | 4.3 | 2.3 | 2.0 88 |
| Other Expenses | 31.2 | 38.9 | (7.7) (20) |
| Total Other Operating Expense | \$75.3 | \$82.3 | \$(7.0) (8)% |
| | | | |

Provision for Income Taxes

Income tax expense for the three months ended June 30, 2018 was \$116.8 million, representing an effective tax rate of 23.0%, compared to \$122.9 million in the prior-year quarter, representing an effective tax rate of 31.4%.

The decrease in the provision for income taxes was primarily attributable to the reduction in the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% as a result of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act ("TCJA") enacted in the fourth quarter of 2017 as well as the tax benefit recognized in the current quarter in conjunction with sales related to a non-strategic lease portfolio. Decreases to the provision for income taxes were partially offset by an increase in income before income taxes, tax accounting changes in 2018 brought about by the TCJA including the tax accounting associated with non-U.S. branches and subsidiaries, and a reduction in the income tax benefit derived from the vesting of restricted stock units and stock option exercises compared to the prior-year quarter. The initial estimated impact of the TCJA may continue to be refined in future periods as further information becomes available.

REPORTING SEGMENTS

Northern Trust is organized around its two client-focused reporting segments: C&IS and Wealth Management. Asset management and related services are provided to C&IS and Wealth Management clients primarily by the Asset Management business. The revenue and expenses of Asset Management and certain other support functions are allocated fully to C&IS and Wealth Management. Income and expense associated with the wholesale funding activities and investment portfolios of the Corporation and its principal subsidiary, The Northern Trust Company (the Bank), as well as certain corporate-based expense, executive level compensation and nonrecurring items, are not allocated to C&IS and Wealth Management, and are reported in Northern Trust's third reporting segment, Treasury and Other, in the following pages.

<u>Table of Contents</u> REPORTING SEGMENTS (continued)

The following tables reflect the earnings contributions and average assets of Northern Trust's reporting segments for the three- and six- month periods ended June 30, 2018 and 2017. Reporting segment financial information, presented on an internal management-reporting basis, is determined by accounting systems that are used to allocate revenue and expense related to each segment and incorporates processes for allocating assets, liabilities, equity and the applicable interest income and expense.

Table 15: Results of Reporting Segments

| Three | 1 | 0 0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------|------------|---|----------------|-----|--------------------|---|-------------|-----|-----------------|----|--------------|---|------------|---|
| Months | Corporate & | | | Wealth | | | | Treasury | and | | | Total | | | |
| Ended June | Institutional | Services | | Managem | ent | t | | Other | | | | Consolidated | d | | |
| 30, | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| (\$ In | 2018 | 2017 | | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2018 | | 2017 | |
| Millions) | 2010 | 2017 | | 2010 | | 2017 | | 2010 | | 2017 | | 2010 | | 2017 | |
| Noninterest | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Income | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Trust, | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Investment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| and Other | \$552.2 | \$487.1 | | \$390.7 | | \$361.1 | | \$ — | | \$ — | | \$942.9 | | \$848.2 | |
| Servicing | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Fees | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exchange | 60.1 | 50.6 | | 1.0 | | 0.8 | | 17.8 | | (1.5 |) | 78.9 | | 49.9 | |
| Trading | | | | | | | | | | (| , | | | | |
| Income | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Other | 4.50 | | | 26. | | 26. | | 40 = | , | 40 - | | - 1.0 | | 04.6 | |
| Noninterest | 45.0 | 44.4 | | 26.7 | | 26.7 | | (0.7 |) | 10.5 | | 71.0 | | 81.6 | |
| Income | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Net Interest Income* | 247.9 | 176.0 | | 209.6 | | 181.8 | | (34.9 |) | (7.4 |) | 422.6 | | 350.4 | |
| Revenue* | 905.2 | 758.1 | | 628.0 | | 570.4 | | (17.8 |) | 1.6 | | 1,515.4 | | 1,330.1 | |
| Provision for | _ | | | | | | | (17.0 | , | 1.0 | | | | 1,330.1 | |
| Credit Losse | 3 11 | (2.7 |) | (1.5 |) | (4.3 |) | _ | | _ | | 1.5 | | (7.0 |) |
| Noninterest | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Expense | 599.3 | 545.6 | | 369.5 | | 350.9 | | 28.6 | | 40.9 | | 997.4 | | 937.4 | |
| Income | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| before | 202.0 | 215.2 | | 260.0 | | 222.0 | | (16.1 | , | (20.2 | , | 516 F | | 200 5 | |
| Income | 302.9 | 215.2 | | 260.0 | | 223.8 | | (46.4 |) | (39.3 |) | 516.5 | | 399.7 | |
| Taxes* | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Provision for | • | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Income | 63.0 | 67.7 | | 64.1 | | 84.3 | | (1.0 |) | (20.2 |) | 126.1 | | 131.8 | |
| Taxes* | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Net Income | \$239.9 | \$147.5 | | \$195.9 | | \$139.5 | | \$(45.4 |) | \$(19.1 |) | \$390.4 | | \$267.9 | |
| Percentage o | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Consolidated | 1 62 % | 55 | % | 50 | % | 52 | % | (12 |)% | (7 |)% | 100 | % | 100 | % |
| Net Income | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Average | \$82,153.1 | \$80,584.0 | | \$26,086.3 | 3 | \$26,823. | 5 | \$15,627.3 | 3 | \$10,993. | 2 | \$123,866.7 | | \$118,400. | 7 |
| Assets | , | , ==,== | | , = =, = = = : | | , = 2,0 =0. | | ,, · · · · | | , , , , , , , , | | ,000. | | ,, | |

* Non-GAAP financial measures stated on a fully taxable equivalent basis (FTE). Total consolidated includes FTE adjustments of \$9.3 million for 2018 and \$8.9 million for 2017. A reconciliation of total consolidated revenue, net interest income and net interest margin on a GAAP basis to revenue, net interest income and net interest margin on an FTE basis (each of which is a non-GAAP financial measure) is provided on page 28.

| Six Months Ended June 30, | Corporate & Institutional | | Wealth Managemen | t | Treasury and Other | | Total Consolidated | |
|---|---------------------------|----------------|---------------------|------------|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------|
| (\$ In Millions) Noninterest Income Trust, | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| Investment and Other Servicing Fees Foreign | \$1,096.5 | \$950.0 | \$784.1 | \$706.4 | \$— | \$ | \$1,880.6 | \$1,656.4 |
| Exchange Trading Income Other | 122.5 | 99.7 | 2.2 | 1.7 | 32.7 | (3.4) | 157.4 | 98.0 |
| Noninterest Income | 91.6 | 88.6 | 52.4 | 52.2 | 2.8 | 15.4 | 146.8 | 156.2 |
| Net Interest Income* | 477.3 | 342.5 | 408.4 | 358.8 | (70.4) | 11.5 | 815.3 | 712.8 |
| Revenue* | 1,787.9 | 1,480.8 | 1,247.1 | 1,119.1 | (34.9) | 23.5 | 3,000.1 | 2,623.4 |
| Provision for Credit Losses | (0.9) | (2.4) | (0.6) | (5.6) | _ | _ | (1.5) | (8.0) |
| Noninterest Expense | 1,184.9 | 1,056.4 | 735.2 | 697.2 | 72.6 | 78.3 | 1,992.7 | 1,831.9 |
| Income before Income Taxes* | 603.9 | 426.8 | 512.5 | 427.5 | (107.5) | (54.8) | 1,008.9 | 799.5 |
| Provision for | | 1246 | 106.5 | 121.1 | (10.4 | (40.2 | 2260 | 255.5 |
| Income Taxes* | 129.8 | 134.6 | 126.5 | 161.1 | (19.4) | (40.2) | 236.9 | 255.5 |
| Net Income | \$474.1 | \$292.2 | \$386.0 | \$266.4 | \$(88.1) | \$(14.6) | \$772.0 | \$544.0 |
| Percentage of | | <i>4-22-1-</i> | ΨΕσσ.σ | Ψ2001. | φ(σσ.1) | 4 (1.10) | <i>\$772</i> 10 | φεσ |
| Consolidated Net Income | | 54 % | 50 % | 49 % | (11)% | (3)% | 100 % | 100 % |
| Average Assets | \$82,891.4 | \$79,201.4 | \$26,097.1 | \$26,743.1 | \$15,189.8 | \$11,499.3 | \$124,178.3 | \$117,443.8 |

^{*} Non-GAAP financial measures stated on a fully taxable equivalent basis (FTE). Total consolidated includes FTE adjustments of \$18.0 million for 2018 and \$17.8 million for 2017. A reconciliation of total consolidated revenue, net interest income and net interest margin on a GAAP basis to revenue, net interest income and net interest margin on an FTE basis (each of which is a non-GAAP financial measure) is provided on page 28.

<u>Table of Contents</u>
REPORTING SEGMENTS (continued)
Corporate & Institutional Services

C&IS net income totaled \$239.9 million in the current quarter compared to \$147.5 million in the prior-year quarter, an increase of \$92.4 million, or 63%. Noninterest income was \$657.3 million in the current quarter, up \$75.2 million, or 13%, from \$582.1 million in the prior-year quarter, reflecting higher trust, investment and other servicing fees and foreign exchange trading income.

Table 16: C&IS Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees

| | Three Months | | | | |
|---|----------------|---------|--------|-----|---|
| | Ended June 30, | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Change | 2 | |
| Custody and Fund Administration | \$376.7 | \$327.5 | \$49.2 | 15 | % |
| Investment Management | 113.1 | 99.3 | 13.8 | 14 | |
| Securities Lending | 30.2 | 24.6 | 5.6 | 23 | |
| Other | 32.2 | 35.7 | (3.5) | (10 |) |
| Total C&IS Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees | \$552.2 | \$487.1 | \$65.1 | 13 | % |

Custody and fund administration fees, the largest component of C&IS fees, are driven primarily by values of client AUC/A, transaction volumes and number of accounts. The asset values used to calculate these fees vary depending on the individual fee arrangements negotiated with each client. Custody fees related to asset values are client specific and are priced based on quarter-end or month-end values, values at the beginning of each quarter or average values for a month or quarter. The fund administration fees that are asset-value-related are priced using month-end, quarter-end, or average daily balances. Investment management fees are based generally on market values of client assets under management throughout the period.

Custody and fund administration fees increased \$49.2 million, or 15%, from the prior-year quarter, primarily due to revenue associated with the UBS acquisition, new business, and the favorable impact of movements in foreign exchange rates. Investment management fees increased \$13.8 million, or 14%, primarily due to new business, favorable markets, and a change to gross revenue presentation for certain clients. There is a corresponding increase to third-party advisor costs in outside services as a result of the change to gross revenue presentation for these clients. Securities lending fees increased 23% primarily due to increased loan volumes. Other fees decreased 10%, primarily due to lower sub-advisor fees. The decrease associated with sub-advisor fees has an associated decrease in outside services expense.

Foreign exchange trading income totaled \$60.1 million in the current quarter, an increase of \$9.5 million, or 19%, from \$50.6 million in the prior-year quarter. The increase was driven primarily by higher client volumes. Other noninterest income in C&IS totaled \$45.0 million in the current quarter, up 1%, from \$44.4 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily due to higher security commissions and trading income, partially offset by lower treasury management fees.

Net interest income stated on an FTE basis was \$247.9 million in the current quarter, up \$71.9 million, or 41%, from \$176.0 million in the prior-year quarter. The increase in net interest income was primarily attributable to an increase in the net interest margin and higher levels of earning assets. The net interest margin increased to 1.31% from 0.94% in the prior-year quarter, primarily due to higher short-term interest rates. Average earning assets totaled \$75.6 billion, up from \$74.8 billion in the prior-year quarter. The earning assets in C&IS consisted primarily of intercompany assets and loans and leases. Funding sources were primarily comprised of non-U.S. custody-related interest-bearing deposits, which averaged \$54.3 billion in the current quarter, up from \$51.7 billion in the prior-year quarter.

The provision for credit losses was \$3.0 million in the current quarter, compared with a provision credit of \$2.7 million in the prior-year quarter. The current quarter provision reflected an increase in the specific reserve attributable to the commercial and institutional and commercial real estate portfolios. The prior-year quarter provision credit reflected a reduction in the inherent reserve requirement due to continued improvement in credit quality.

Total C&IS noninterest expense, which includes the direct expense of the reporting segment, indirect expense allocations for product and operating support and indirect expense allocations for certain corporate support services,

totaled \$599.3 million in the current quarter, up \$53.7 million, or 10%, from \$545.6 million in the prior-year quarter,

primarily reflecting higher compensation expense, indirect expense allocations, outside services expense, and employee benefits expense.

Table of Contents

REPORTING SEGMENTS (continued)

Corporate & Institutional Services (continued)

The provision for income taxes was \$63.0 million in the current quarter compared to \$67.7 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily attributable to the reduction in the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% as a result of the TCJA, partially offset by an increase in income before income taxes.

Wealth Management

Wealth Management net income was \$195.9 million in the current quarter, up \$56.4 million, or 40%, from \$139.5 million in the prior-year quarter. Noninterest income was \$418.4 million, up \$29.8 million, or 8%, from \$388.6 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily reflecting higher trust, investment and other servicing fees. Trust, investment and other servicing fees in Wealth Management totaled \$390.7 million in the current quarter, increasing \$29.6 million, or 8%, from \$361.1 million in the prior-year quarter. The following table provides a summary of Wealth Management trust, investment and other servicing fees.

Thusa Mantha

Table 17: Wealth Management Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees

| | I nree Months | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|---------|-------|-----|--|--|--|--|--|
| | Ended June 30, | | | | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 2017 Ch | | Chang | ge | | | | | |
| Central | \$150.7 | \$143.1 | \$7.6 | 5 % | | | | | |
| East | 97.0 | 88.3 | 8.7 | 10 | | | | | |
| West | 80.4 | 73.4 | 7.0 | 10 | | | | | |
| Global Family Office | 62.6 | 56.3 | 6.3 | 11 | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

Total Wealth Management Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees \$390.7 \$361.1 \$29.6 8 %

Wealth Management fee income is calculated primarily based on market values. The increase in Wealth Management fees across all regions was primarily attributable to favorable markets, a change in presentation of certain fees resulting from the adoption of the new revenue recognition standard, and new business. The 11% increase in Global Family Office fees was primarily attributable to new business and favorable markets.

Other noninterest income was \$26.7 million in both the current and prior-year quarters, primarily reflecting an increase in other operating income, offset by a decrease in securities commissions and trading income.

Net interest income stated on an FTE basis was \$209.6 million in the current quarter, up \$27.8 million, or 15%, from \$181.8 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily reflecting an increase in the net interest margin, partially offset by lower levels of earning assets. The net interest margin increased to 3.26% from 2.75% in the prior-year quarter, reflecting higher yields on earning assets. Average earning assets decreased \$792.3 million to \$25.8 billion from the prior-year quarter's \$26.6 billion. Earning assets and funding sources were primarily comprised of loans and domestic interest-bearing deposits, respectively.

The provision for credit losses was a provision credit of \$1.5 million in the current quarter, compared with a provision credit of \$4.3 million in the prior-year quarter. The current quarter provision reflected a reduction in the specific reserve attributable to the residential real estate portfolio. The prior-year quarter provision reflected a reduction in the inherent allowance requirement due to improvement in credit quality.

Total noninterest expense, which includes the direct expense of the reporting segment, indirect expense allocations for product and operating support and indirect expense allocations for certain corporate support services, totaled \$369.5 million in the current quarter, compared to \$350.9 million in the prior-year quarter, an increase of \$18.6 million, or 5%, primarily reflecting higher indirect expense allocations and compensation expense.

The provision for income taxes was \$64.1 million in the current quarter compared to \$84.3 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily attributable to the reduction in the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% as a result of the TCJA, partially offset by an increase in income before income taxes.

Treasury and Other

Treasury and Other includes income and expense associated with the wholesale funding activities and the investment portfolios of the Corporation and the Bank, and certain corporate-based expenses, executive-level compensation and nonrecurring items not allocated to C&IS and Wealth Management.

Table of Contents

REPORTING SEGMENTS (continued)

Treasury and Other (continued)

Treasury and Other noninterest income increased \$8.1 million, from \$9.0 million in the prior-year quarter to \$17.1 million in the current quarter, primarily due to higher foreign exchange trading income due to increased foreign exchange swap activity in Treasury, partially offset by lower other noninterest income.

Net interest income decreased \$27.5 million from net interest expense of \$7.4 million in the prior-year quarter to net interest expense of \$34.9 million in the current quarter. The reduction in net interest income in Treasury and Other was driven by higher net funds transfer pricing credits in the C&IS and Wealth Management segments, partially offset by higher yields on earning assets. Average earning assets increased \$4.4 billion to \$13.0 billion from \$8.6 billion in the prior-year quarter.

Noninterest expense totaled \$28.6 million in the current quarter, down \$12.3 million, or 30%, from \$40.9 million in the prior-year quarter, primarily reflecting higher indirect expense allocations to C&IS and Wealth Management as compared to the prior-year quarter, lower compensation expense, and lower other operating expense, partially offset by higher outside services expense, equipment and software expense, and employee benefit expense.

The provision for income taxes was a benefit of \$1.0 million in the current quarter compared to a \$20.2 million benefit in the prior-year quarter, impacted by the reduction in the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% as a result of the TCJA, a reduction in the income tax benefit derived from the vesting of restricted stock units and stock option exercises compared to the prior-year quarter, and a decrease in income before income taxes.

SIX-MONTH CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

Overview

Net income per diluted common share was \$3.26 for the six months ended June 30, 2018, and \$2.21 in the comparable prior-year period. Net income totaled \$772.0 million, up \$228.0 million, or 42%, compared to \$544.0 million in the prior-year period. The performance in the current period produced an annualized return on average common equity of 16.3%, compared to 11.6% in the prior-year period. The annualized return on average assets was 1.25% in the current period compared to 0.93% in the prior-year period.

Revenue for the six months ended June 30, 2018 totaled \$2.98 billion, up \$376.5 million, or 14%, as compared to \$2.61 billion in the prior-year period.

Noninterest income was \$2.18 billion, up \$274.1 million, or 14%, from \$1.91 billion in the prior-year period, primarily driven by increased trust, investment, and other servicing fees, foreign exchange trading income, and security commissions and trading income, partially offset by lower other operating income.

Net interest income totaled \$797.3 million, up \$102.3 million, or 15%, as compared to \$695.0 million in the prior-year period, due to a higher net interest margin and an increase in earning assets.

The provision for credit losses was a provision credit of \$1.5 million in the current period, as compared to a provision credit of \$8.0 million in the prior-year period.

Noninterest expense totaled \$1.99 billion in the current period, up \$160.8 million, or 9%, from \$1.83 billion in the prior-year period, primarily attributable to higher compensation, outside services, employee benefits, equipment and software and occupancy expense.

Table of Contents

SIX-MONTH CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Noninterest Income

The components of noninterest income are provided below.

Table 18: Six Months Ended June 30 Noninterest Income

| Noninterest Income | Six Months Ended | | | | | | | | |
|--|------------------|-----------|---------|-----|---|--|--|--|--|
| Nonniterest income | June 30, | | | | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Change | | | | | | |
| Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees | \$1,880.6 | \$1,656.4 | \$224.2 | 14 | % | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Trading Income | 157.4 | 98.0 | 59.4 | 61 | | | | | |
| Treasury Management Fees | 27.5 | 29.6 | (2.1) | (7 |) | | | | |
| Security Commissions and Trading Income | 53.3 | 44.6 | 8.7 | 20 | | | | | |
| Other Operating Income | 66.2 | 82.7 | (16.5) | (20 |) | | | | |
| Investment Security Losses, net | (0.2) | (0.7) | 0.5 | N/M | [| | | | |
| Total Noninterest Income | \$2,184.8 | \$1,910.6 | \$274.2 | 14 | % | | | | |

As illustrated in the following table, trust, investment and other servicing fees from C&IS increased \$146.5 million, or 15%, totaling \$1.10 billion, compared to \$950.0 million a year ago.

Table 19: Six Months Ended June 30 C&IS Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees

| ('X/IS Trust Investment and Other Servicing Fees | S1x Mont | hs | | | | | |
|--|----------------|---------|---------|------|--|--|--|
| C&IS Trust, investment and Other Servicing Pees | Ended June 30, | | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Change | | | | |
| Custody and Fund Administration | \$750.6 | \$635.0 | \$115.6 | 18 % | | | |
| Investment Management | 222.8 | 192.8 | 30.0 | 16 | | | |
| Securities Lending | 56.2 | 48.4 | 7.8 | 16 | | | |
| Other | 66.9 | 73.8 | (6.9) | (9) | | | |
| Total | \$1,096.5 | \$950.0 | \$146.5 | 15 % | | | |

Custody and fund administration fees, the largest component of C&IS fees, increased 18%, primarily driven by revenue associated with the UBS acquisition, new business, the favorable impact of movements in foreign exchange rates, and favorable markets. C&IS investment management fees increased 16%, primarily due to the favorable impact of markets, new business, and a change to gross revenue presentation for certain clients. There is a corresponding increase to third-party advisor costs in outside services as a result of the change to gross revenue presentation for certain clients. Securities lending fees increased 16%, primarily driven by increased loan volumes, partially offset by lower spreads. Other fees in C&IS decreased 9%, primarily due to lower sub-advisor fees, partially offset by new business. The decrease associated with sub-advisor fees has an associated decrease in outside services expense. As illustrated in the following table, trust, investment and other servicing fees from Wealth Management totaled \$784.1 million, up \$77.7 million, or 11%, from \$706.4 million a year ago.

Table 20: Six Months Ended June 30 Wealth Management Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees

| , | | | | | 0 |
|--|---------|----------|--------|-----|---|
| | Six Mo | nths | | | |
| | Ended J | June 30, | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Chang | e | |
| Wealth Management Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees | | | | | |
| Central | \$304.6 | \$280.5 | \$24.1 | 9 % | |
| East | 195.9 | 173.5 | 22.4 | 13 | |
| West | 159.0 | 143.0 | 16.0 | 11 | |
| Global Family Office | 124.6 | 109.4 | 15.2 | 14 | |
| Total | \$784.1 | \$706.4 | \$77.7 | 11% | |
| | | | | | |

Table of Contents

SIX-MONTH CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Noninterest Income (continued)

The increase in Wealth Management fees across the regions was primarily attributable to favorable markets, a change in presentation of certain fees resulting from the adoption of the new revenue recognition standard, and new business. The 14% increase in Global Family Office fees was primarily attributable to new business and favorable markets. Foreign exchange trading income increased \$59.4 million, or 61%, and totaled \$157.4 million compared with \$98.0 million in the prior-year period. The increase was attributable to higher client volumes and increased foreign exchange swap activity in Treasury.

Security commissions and trading income increased \$8.7 million, or 20%, and totaled \$53.3 million compared with \$44.6 million in the prior-year period. The increase was attributable to higher core brokerage and transition management revenue.

Other operating income decreased \$16.5 million, or 20%, to \$66.2 million compared with \$82.7 million in the prior-year period. The decrease was due to non-recurring net gains on hedging activity recognized in the prior-year period and a valuation adjustment to existing swap agreements related to Visa Inc. Class B common shares recorded in other income in the current period. The components of other operating income are provided below.

Table 21: Six Months Ended June 30 Other Operating Income

| | | | - F | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------|--------|---------|--------|-----|
| | Six M | onths | | | |
| Other Operating Income | Ended | June | | | |
| | 30, | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Chang | ge | |
| Loan Service Fees | \$25.2 | \$25.7 | \$(0.5 |) (2 |)% |
| Banking Service Fees | 24.2 | 24.9 | (0.7 |) (3 |) |
| Other Income | 16.8 | 32.1 | (15.3 |) (48 | 3) |
| Total Other Operating Income | \$66.2 | \$82.7 | \$(16.5 | i) (20 |))% |

<u>Table of Contents</u> SIX-MONTH CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued) Net Interest Income

The following table presents an analysis of average balances and interest rate changes affecting net interest income. Table 22: Six Months Ended June 30 Average Consolidated Balance Sheets with Analysis of Net Interest Income NORTHERN TRUST CORPORATION

| | NORTHERN TRUST CORPORATION | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------|-------------|----------|---------------|-------------|--------|
| (Interest and Rate on a Fully Taxable Equivalent Basis) | Six Months Ended June 30, 2018 | | 2017 | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | A xx2m2 c2 | | Interest | A xxama a a | | |
| | interes | Balance | Rate | meres | Balance | Rate |
| Average Earning Assets | | | | | | |
| Federal Reserve and Other Central Bank Deposits | \$96.2 | \$25,498.4 | 0.76 % | \$63.4 | \$22,190.6 | 0.58 % |
| Interest-Bearing Due from and Deposits with Banks (1) | 38.2 | 6,737.6 | 1.14 | 29.0 | 7,171.8 | 0.82 |
| Federal Funds Sold and Securities Purchased under | 15.1 | 1,442.0 | 2.11 | 14.0 | 2,035.7 | 1.38 |
| Agreements to Resell | 15.1 | 1,112.0 | 2.11 | 11.0 | 2,033.7 | 1.50 |
| Securities | | | | | | |
| U.S. Government | 50.5 | 5,726.8 | 1.78 | 45.0 | 6,816.6 | 1.33 |
| Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | 6.0 | 732.1 | 1.63 | 7.0 | 959.1 | 1.47 |
| Government Sponsored Agency | 190.7 | 19,535.4 | 1.97 | 130.6 | 17,843.0 | 1.48 |
| Other (2) | 167.8 | 23,023.5 | 1.47 | 113.8 | 18,633.1 | 1.23 |
| Total Securities | 415.0 | 49,017.8 | 1.71 | 296.4 | 44,251.8 | 1.35 |
| Loans and Leases (3) | 527.1 | 32,351.1 | 3.29 | 442.5 | 33,781.9 | 2.64 |
| Total Earning Assets | 1,091.6 | 5 115,046.9 | 1.91 | 845.3 | 109,431.8 | 1.56 |
| Allowance for Credit Losses Assigned to Loans and | | (128.7) | | _ | (161.5) | |
| Leases | | , | | | , | |
| Cash and Due from Banks and Other Central Bank | | 2,516.4 | | | 2,410.5 | |
| Deposits (4) | | 440.5 | | | 165.5 | |
| Buildings and Equipment | | 448.5 | | | 465.5 | |
| Client Security Settlement Receivables | | 976.9 | | | 829.3 | _ |
| Goodwill Other Assets | | 613.4 | | | 520.6 | |
| Other Assets | <u> </u> | 4,704.9 | | <u> </u> | 3,947.6 | — or |
| Total Assets | 5 — | \$124,178.3 | — % | \$ — | \$117,443.8 | — % |
| Average Source of Funds Deposits | | | | | | |
| Savings, Money Market and Other | \$29.8 | \$15,739.8 | 0.38 % | \$70 | \$15,340.8 | 0.10 % |
| Savings Certificates and Other Time | \$29.8 4.1 | 977.1 | 0.38 % | \$ 7.9 4.7 | 1,325.6 | 0.10 % |
| Non-U.S. Offices — Interest-Bearing | 106.5 | 58,437.8 | 0.37 | 56.0 | 54,565.7 | 0.71 |
| Total Interest-Bearing Deposits | 140.4 | 75,154.7 | 0.37 | 68.6 | 71,232.1 | 0.21 |
| Short-Term Borrowings | 86.0 | 10,376.1 | 1.67 | 21.2 | 5,534.8 | 0.19 |
| Senior Notes | 23.4 | 1,497.5 | 3.16 | 23.5 | 1,496.8 | 3.16 |
| Long-Term Debt | 23.0 | 1,418.6 | 3.27 | 17.0 | 1,431.1 | 2.39 |
| Floating Rate Capital Debt | 3.5 | 277.5 | 2.51 | 2.2 | 277.4 | 1.63 |
| Total Interest-Related Funds | 276.3 | 88,724.4 | 0.63 | 132.5 | 79,972.2 | 0.33 |
| Interest Rate Spread | | | 1.28 | | | 1.23 |
| Demand and Other Noninterest-Bearing Deposits | | 21,752.4 | | | 24,609.3 | _ |
| Other Liabilities | | 3,531.4 | | | 2,978.1 | |
| Stockholders' Equity | | 10,170.1 | | | 9,884.2 | |
| Total Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity | \$ — | \$124,178.3 | % | \$— | \$117,443.8 | % |
| Net Interest Income/Margin (FTE Adjusted) | \$815.3 | | | \$712.8 | | 1.31 % |
| <i>U</i> ("J""") | | | | | • | • |

Net Interest Income/Margin (Unadjusted) \$797.3 \$— 1.40 % \$695.0 \$— 1.28 %

Table of Contents

SIX-MONTH CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Net Interest Income (continued)

ANALYSIS OF NET INTEREST INCOME CHANGES DUE TO VOLUME AND RATE

Six Months Ended
June 30, 2018/2017
Change Due To
Average
Rate Total
Balance
\$53.6 \$192.7 \$246.3

(In Millions)

Earning Assets (FTE) \$53.6 \$192.7 \$246.3 Interest-Related Funds 27.7 116.1 143.8 Net Interest Income (FTE) \$25.9 \$76.6 \$102.5

- (1) Interest-Bearing Due from and Deposits with Banks includes the interest-bearing component of Cash and Due from Banks and Interest-Bearing Deposits with Banks as presented on the consolidated balance sheets.
- Other securities include certain community development investments and Federal Home Loan Bank and Federal Reserve stock, which are classified in other assets in the consolidated balance sheets as of June 30, 2018 and 2017.
- (3) Average balances include nonaccrual loans. Lease financing receivable balances are reduced by deferred income.
- Cash and Due from Banks and Other Central Bank Deposits includes the non-interest-bearing component of Federal Reserve and Other Central Bank Deposits as presented on the consolidated balance sheets.
- (5) Rate calculations are based on actual balances rather than the rounded amounts presented in the Average Consolidated Balance Sheets with Analysis of Net Interest Income.

Net Interest Income (FTE Adjusted), a non-generally accepted accounting principle (GAAP) financial measure, includes adjustments to a fully taxable equivalent basis for loans and securities. Such adjustments are based on a blended federal and state tax rate of 24.8% and 37.8% for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017,

Notes: respectively. Total taxable equivalent interest adjustments amounted to \$18.0 million and \$17.8 million for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively. A reconciliation of net interest income and net interest margin on a GAAP basis to net interest income and net interest margin on an FTE basis (each of which is a non-GAAP financial measure) is provided on page 28.

Interest revenue on cash collateral positions is reported above within interest-bearing deposits with banks and within loans and leases. Interest expense on cash collateral positions is reported above within non-U.S. offices interest-bearing deposits. Related cash collateral received from and deposited with derivative counterparties is recorded net of the associated derivative contract within other assets and other liabilities, respectively. Net interest income, stated on an FTE basis, totaled \$815.3 million, an increase of \$102.5 million, or 14%, from \$712.8 million reported in the prior-year period. The increase is the result of higher net interest margin and an increase in earning assets. Average earning assets were \$115.0 billion, up \$5.6 billion, or 5%, from \$109.4 billion in the prior-year period, primarily attributable to higher levels of securities and short-term interest-bearing deposits, partially offset by a reduction in loans and leases. The net interest margin, on an FTE basis, increased to 1.43% from 1.31% in the prior-year period.

Provision for Credit Losses

The provision for credit losses was a provision credit of \$1.5 million in the current-year period, compared to a provision credit of \$8.0 million in the prior-year period. The credit provision in the current-year period was primarily driven by reductions in outstanding loans that resulted in a reduction in the inherent allowance ascribed to the residential real estate, commercial real estate, and commercial and institutional portfolios as well as the reduction in the specific reserve attributable to the residential real estate portfolio, partially offset by an increase in the specific reserve attributable to the commercial and institutional and commercial real estate portfolios. Net charge-offs in the current-year period totaled \$3.1 million resulting from \$6.5 million of charge-offs and \$3.4 million of recoveries, compared to net charge-offs of \$5.2 million in the prior-year period resulting from \$9.7 million of charge-offs and

\$4.5 million of recoveries. Residential real estate loans continued to reflect weakness relative to the overall portfolio, accounting for 84% and 81% of total nonperforming loans and leases at June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively. Loan balances within the residential real estate, commercial and institutional, and commercial real estate portfolios decreased in the current period, while loan balances in the non-U.S. portfolio increased. For additional discussion of the consolidated allowance and provision for credit losses refer to the "Asset Quality" section beginning on page 23.

Table of Contents

SIX-MONTH CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)

Noninterest Expense

Noninterest expense totaled \$1.99 billion for the current period, up \$160.8 million, or 9%, compared to \$1.83 billion in the prior-year period. The components of noninterest expense are provided below.

Table 23: Six Months Ended June 30 Noninterest Expense

| Noninterest Expense | Six Months Ended | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|------------------|-----------|---------|-----|---|--|--|--|
| | June 30, | | | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Change | | | | | |
| Compensation | \$926.4 | \$858.3 | \$68.1 | 8 | % | | | |
| Employee Benefits | 180.5 | 153.4 | 27.1 | 18 | | | | |
| Outside Services | 357.0 | 320.1 | 36.9 | 12 | | | | |
| Equipment and Software | 284.2 | 261.0 | 23.2 | 9 | | | | |
| Occupancy | 100.3 | 91.7 | 8.6 | 9 | | | | |
| Other Operating Expense | 144.3 | 147.4 | (3.1) | (2) |) | | | |
| Total Noninterest Expense | \$1,992.7 | \$1,831.9 | \$160.8 | 9 | % | | | |

Compensation expense, the largest component of noninterest expense, totaled \$926.4 million, up \$68.1 million, or 8%, from \$858.3 million in the prior-year period, reflecting increases due to higher cash-based incentive accruals, higher salary expense driven by base pay adjustments and staff growth including the UBS acquisition, and higher long-term performance-based incentive expense, partially offset by lower severance-related and restructuring charges of \$10.0 million in the current period compared to \$19.5 million in the prior-year period

Employee benefits expense of \$180.5 million was up \$27.1 million, or 18%, from \$153.4 million in the prior-year period, reflecting higher retirement plan expenses, medical expenses, and payroll taxes, partially offset by lower severance-related and restructuring charges of \$0.3 million in the current period compared to severance-related and restructuring charges of \$2.5 million in the prior-year period.

Outside services expense equaled \$357.0 million, up \$36.9 million, or 12%, from \$320.1 million in the prior-year period, primarily reflecting a change in presentation of third-party advisor costs resulting from the adoption of the new revenue recognition accounting standard, higher technical services costs, increased costs associated with the UBS acquisition, higher sub-custodian expenses, and higher severance-related and restructuring charges of \$4.9 million in the current period compared to \$0.8 million in the prior-year period, partially offset by lower sub-advisor costs and consulting services. There is a corresponding increase to trust, investment and other servicing fees as a result of the adoption of the new revenue recognition accounting standard.

Equipment and software expense totaled \$284.2 million, up \$23.2 million, or 9%, from \$261.0 million in the prior-year period, reflecting increased software amortization and costs associated with the UBS acquisition. Occupancy expense equaled \$100.3 million, up \$8.6 million, or 9%, from \$91.7 million in the prior-year period, primarily reflecting accelerated depreciation expense related to a previously announced facility exit. Other operating expense totaled \$144.3 million, down \$3.1 million, or 2%, from \$147.4 million in the prior-year period, primarily reflecting lower charges associated with account servicing activities, partially offset by higher costs associated with the UBS acquisition. The components of other operating expense are provided below.

Table 24: Six Months Ended June 30 Other Operating Expense

| Other Oregatine Frances | Six Months | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|---------|--------------|--|--|--|
| Other Operating Expense | Ended June 30, | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | Change | | | |
| Business Promotion | \$38.0 | \$36.0 | \$2.0 6 % | | | |
| Staff Related | 15.7 | 21.4 | (5.7) (27) | | | |
| FDIC Insurance Premiums | 16.5 | 17.0 | (0.5)(3) | | | |
| Other Intangibles Amortization | 8.9 | 4.7 | 4.2 90 | | | |
| Other Expenses | 65.2 | 68.3 | (3.1)(4) | | | |
| Total Other Operating Expense | \$144.3 | \$147.4 | \$(3.1) (2)% | | | |

<u>Table of Contents</u>
SIX-MONTH CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS (continued)
Provision for Income Taxes

Income tax expense for the six months ended June 30, 2018 was \$218.9 million, representing an effective tax rate of 22.1%. The provision for income taxes was \$237.7 million for the six months ended June 30, 2017, representing an effective tax rate of 30.4%.

The decrease in the provision for income taxes compared to the prior-year period was primarily due to the decrease in the provision for income taxes attributable to the reduction in the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% as a result of the TCJA enacted in the fourth quarter of 2017, a \$22.6 million benefit resulting from a change in accounting method regarding the timing of tax deductions for software development-related expenses, and the tax benefit recognized in conjunction with sales related to a non-strategic lease portfolio, partially offset by an increase in income before income taxes, tax accounting changes in 2018 brought about by the TCJA including the tax accounting associated with non-U.S. branches and subsidiaries, a \$15.8 million net provision recorded in the first quarter of 2018 representing adjustments to the initial estimated impact of the TCJA recorded in the fourth quarter of 2017, and a reduction in the income tax benefit derived from the vesting of restricted stock units and stock option exercises compared to the prior-year period. The initial estimated impact of the TCJA may continue to be refined in future periods as further information becomes available.

CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS

Total assets were \$135.1 billion and \$138.6 billion at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, and averaged \$123.9 billion in the current quarter compared with \$118.4 billion in the quarter ended June 30, 2017. Average balances are considered to be a better measure of balance sheet trends, as period-end balances can be impacted by the timing of deposit and withdrawal activity involving large client balances. Loans and leases totaled \$32.5 billion and \$32.6 billion at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, and averaged \$32.2 billion in the current quarter, down 5% from \$33.9 billion in the quarter ended June 30, 2017. Securities, inclusive of Federal Reserve stock, Federal Home Loan Bank stock, and certain community development investments, which are classified in other assets in the consolidated balance sheets, totaled \$50.6 billion and \$47.4 billion at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, and averaged \$49.7 billion for the current quarter, up 14% from \$43.7 billion in the quarter ended June 30, 2017. In aggregate, the categories of federal funds sold and securities purchased under agreements to resell, interest-bearing due from and deposits with banks, and Federal Reserve and other central bank deposits totaled \$41.1 billion and \$49.6 billion at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, and averaged \$32.5 billion in the current quarter, up 1% from \$32.3 billion in the quarter ended June 30, 2017, primarily reflecting increased Federal Reserve and other central bank deposits, partially offset by lower interest-bearing due from and deposits with banks. Interest-bearing client deposits at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, totaled \$79.9 billion and \$83.8 billion, respectively, and averaged \$74.1 billion in the current quarter compared to \$73.2 billion in the quarter ended June 30, 2017. Noninterest-bearing client deposits at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 totaled \$26.7 billion and \$28.6 billion, respectively, and averaged \$21.5 billion in the current quarter, down 9% from \$23.5 billion in the quarter ended June 30, 2017.

Total stockholders' equity was \$10.4 billion at June 30, 2018 and \$10.2 billion at December 31, 2017, and averaged \$10.2 billion for the current quarter, up 2% from \$10.0 billion for the quarter ended June 30, 2017. The increase in stockholders' equity was primarily attributable to earnings, partially offset by the repurchase of common stock pursuant to the Corporation's share repurchase program and dividend declarations.

During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Corporation declared cash dividends totaling \$95.7 million and \$192.2 million to common stockholders, and cash dividends totaling \$5.9 million and \$23.2 million to preferred stockholders, respectively. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Corporation repurchased 1,787,701 shares of common stock, including 5,986 shares withheld related to share-based compensation, at a total cost of \$190.6 million (\$106.63 average price per share) and 4,305,710 shares of common stock, including 385,109 shares withheld related to share-based compensation, at a total cost of \$453.8 million (\$105.39 average price per share), respectively.

<u>Table of Contents</u> CAPITAL RATIOS

The capital ratios of Northern Trust and its principal subsidiary, The Northern Trust Company, remained strong at June 30, 2018, exceeding the minimum requirements for classification as "well-capitalized" under applicable U.S. regulatory requirements.

The table below provides capital ratios for Northern Trust Corporation and The Northern Trust Company determined by Basel III phased in requirements.

March 31 2018

June 30, 2017

June 30, 2018

Table 25: Regulatory Capital Ratios

| | Julie 30, 2018 | Maich 31, 2016 | Julie 30, 2017 | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Capital Ratios — Northern Trust Corporation | orAdvanc Sclandardized | Advanc Sd andardized | Advanc Standardized | | |
| | Approach Approach | Approach Approach | Approach pproach | | |
| Common Equity Tier 1 | 13.3% 12.4 % | 13.0% 12.3 % | 13.2% 12.3 % | | |
| Tier 1 | 14.6% 13.6 % | 14.3 % 13.6 % | 14.5% 13.5 % | | |
| Total | 16.5% 15.6 % | 16.2% 15.5 % | 16.5% 15.6 % | | |
| Tier 1 Leverage | 7.7 % 7.7 % | 7.6 % 7.6 % | 8.1 % 8.1 % | | |
| Supplementary Leverage | 6.8 % N/A | 6.6 % N/A | 7.0 % N/A | | |
| | | | | | |
| | June 30, 2018 | March 31, 2018 | June 30, 2017 | | |
| Capital Ratios — The Northern Trust Comp | Capital Ratios — The Northern Trust CompanyAdvanc Standardized Advanc Standardized Advanc Standardized | | | | |
| | Approach Approach | Approach Approach | Approach | | |
| | - Pproud-pproud- | Approach | Approach | | |
| Common Equity Tier 1 | 13.8% 12.6 % | ** ** | ** ** | | |
| Common Equity Tier 1 Tier 1 | | 13.6% 12.6 % | 13.3% 12.1 % | | |
| * · | 13.8% 12.6 | 13.6% 12.6 % 13.6% 12.6 % | 13.3 % 12.1 % 13.3 % 12.1 % | | |
| Tier 1 | 13.8% 12.6 % 13.8% 12.6 % | 13.6% 12.6 % 13.6% 12.6 % 15.2% 14.3 % | 13.3% 12.1 % 13.3% 12.1 % 14.9% 13.9 % | | |

STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS

Net cash used in operating activities of \$145.5 million for the six months ended June 30, 2018 was primarily attributable to higher net collateral deposited with derivative counterparties, partially offset by period earnings. For the six months ended June 30, 2017, net cash provided by operating activities of \$312.6 million was primarily attributable to period earnings, including the impact of non-cash charges such as amortization of computer software, and higher net collateral deposited with derivative counterparties, partially offset by net changes in other operating activities due to incentive payments and a decrease in accounts payable.

Net cash provided by investing activities of \$3.6 billion for the six months ended June 30, 2018 was primarily attributable to decreased levels of Federal Reserve and other central bank deposits and interest-bearing deposits with banks, partially offset by net purchases of debt securities available for sale and held to maturity, net changes in other investing activities, decreased levels of client security settlement receivables, and the acquisition of Citadel Technology LLC's Omnium technology platform and associated development resources. For the six months ended June 30, 2017, net cash used in investing activities of \$298.0 million was primarily attributable to increased levels of Federal Reserve and other central bank deposits, offset by net proceeds from sale, maturity and redemption of securities available for sale.

Net cash used in financing activities of \$3.0 billion for the six months ended June 30, 2018 was primarily attributable to decreased levels of total deposits and the repurchase of common stock pursuant to the Corporation's share repurchase program, partially offset by higher short-term other borrowings and federal funds purchased. The decrease in total deposits was primarily attributable to lower levels of interest-bearing and non-interest bearing non-U.S. office client deposits and domestic savings, money market and other interest-bearing deposits. For the six months ended June 30, 2017, net cash provided by financing activities of \$184.1 million was primarily attributable to increased levels of total deposits and proceeds from the issuance of fixed-to-floating rate subordinated notes, partially offset by lower short-term other borrowings, the repurchase of common stock pursuant to the Corporation's share repurchase program, and cash dividends paid to common and preferred stockholders. The increase in total deposits was

attributable to higher levels of interest-bearing and non-interest bearing non-U.S. office client deposits.

<u>Table of Contents</u> ASSET QUALITY Securities Portfolio

Northern Trust maintains a high quality debt securities portfolio, with 80% of the combined available for sale, held to maturity, and trading account portfolios at June 30, 2018, composed of U.S. Treasury and government sponsored agency securities and triple-A rated corporate notes, asset-backed securities, covered bonds, sub-sovereign, supranational, sovereign and non-U.S. agency bonds, commercial mortgage-backed securities and obligations of states and political subdivisions. The remaining portfolio was comprised of corporate notes, asset-backed securities, negotiable certificates of deposit, obligations of states and political subdivisions, auction rate securities and other securities, of which as a percentage of the total securities portfolio, 8% was rated double-A, 2% was rated below double-A, and 10% was not rated by Moody's Investors Service or Standard and Poor's (primarily negotiable certificates of deposits of banks and non-U.S. sovereign securities whose long term ratings are at least A). Net unrealized losses within the investment securities portfolio totaled \$290.3 million at June 30, 2018, compared to net unrealized losses of \$160.8 million as of December 31, 2017. Net unrealized losses as of June 30, 2018 were comprised of \$93.2 million and \$383.5 million of gross unrealized gains and losses, respectively. Unrealized losses as of June 30, 2018 of \$167.8 million and \$56.2 million related to government sponsored agency and U.S. government securities, respectively, are primarily attributable to changes in market rates since purchase. \$53.8 million of unrealized losses in securities classified as "other" related to securities primarily purchased at a premium or par by Northern Trust to fulfill its obligation under the Community Reinvestment Act (CRA). Unrealized losses on these CRA-related securities were attributable to yields that were below market rates for the purpose of supporting institutions and programs that benefit low- to moderate-income communities within Northern Trust's market area. Also, \$30.1 million of the unrealized losses related to corporate debt securities, primarily reflecting widened credit spreads and higher market rates since purchase. As of June 30, 2018, 38% of the corporate debt portfolio was backed by guarantees provided by U.S. and non-U.S. governmental entities.

For the six months ended June 30, 2018, charges of \$0.2 million were recorded relating to the other-than-temporary impairment (OTTI) of certain CRA-eligible securities. There were \$0.1 million OTTI losses for the six months ended June 30, 2017. Northern Trust has evaluated all securities with unrealized losses for possible OTTI in accordance with GAAP and Northern Trust's security impairment review policy.

Northern Trust participates in the repurchase agreement market as a relatively low cost alternative for short-term funding. Securities purchased under agreements to resell and securities sold under agreements to repurchase are accounted for as collateralized financings and recorded at the amounts at which the securities were acquired or sold plus accrued interest. To minimize potential credit risk associated with these transactions, the fair value of the securities purchased or sold is monitored, limits are set on exposure with counterparties, and the financial condition of counterparties is regularly assessed. It is Northern Trust's policy to take possession, either directly or via third-party custodians, of securities purchased under agreements to resell. Securities sold under agreements to repurchase are held by the counterparty until their repurchase.

Nonperforming Loans and Leases and Other Real Estate Owned

Nonperforming assets consist of nonperforming loans and leases and other real estate owned (OREO). OREO is comprised of commercial and residential properties acquired in partial or total satisfaction of loans.

Table of Contents

ASSET QUALITY (continued)

Nonperforming Loans and Leases and Other Real Estate Owned (continued)

The following table provides the amounts of nonperforming loans and leases, by loan and lease segment and class, and of OREO that were outstanding at the dates shown, as well as the balance of loans that was delinquent 90 days or more and still accruing interest. The balance of loans delinquent 90 days or more and still accruing interest can fluctuate widely based on the timing of cash collections, renegotiations and renewals.

Table 26: Nonperforming Assets

| (\$ In Millions) | | March 31, 2018 | | June 30 2017 | 0, |
|---|---------|----------------|-----|-----------------|----|
| Nonperforming Loans and Leases | | | | | |
| Commercial | | | | | |
| Commercial and Institutional | | \$4.4 | \$ | \$21.6 | |
| Commercial Real Estate | 6.7 | 6.2 | 8 | 8.6 | |
| Total Commercial | 20.8 | 10.6 | 3 | 30.2 | |
| Personal | | | | | |
| Residential Real Estate | \$107.6 | \$114.1 | \$ | \$128.7 | 7 |
| Private Client | _ | | C | 0.1 | |
| Total Personal | 107.6 | 114.1 | 1 | 128.8 | |
| Total Nonperforming Loans and Leases | 128.4 | 124.7 | 1 | 159.0 | |
| Other Real Estate Owned | 3.8 | 4.2 | | 7.7 | |
| Total Nonperforming Assets | \$132.2 | \$128.9 | \$ | \$166.7 | 7 |
| 90 Day Past Due Loans Still Accruing | \$5.2 | \$6.2 | \$ | \$64.6 | |
| Nonperforming Loans and Leases to Total Loans and Leases | 0.40 % | 0.39 | % C | 0.47 | % |
| Coverage of Loan and Lease Allowance to Nonperforming Loans and Leases | 1.0 x | 1.0 | κ 1 | 1.0 | X |

Nonperforming assets of \$132.2 million as of June 30, 2018, primarily reflected decreases within the residential real estate and commercial and institutional portfolios as a result of payments and charge-offs, partially offset by new nonperforming assets within the same portfolios as compared to the prior year. In addition to the negative impact on net interest income and the risk of credit losses, nonperforming assets also increase operating costs due to the expense associated with collection efforts. Changes in the level of nonperforming assets may be indicative of changes in the credit quality of one or more loan classes. Changes in credit quality impact the allowance for credit losses through the resultant adjustment of the specific allowance and of the qualitative factors used in the determination of the inherent allowance levels within the allowance for credit losses.

Northern Trust's underwriting standards do not allow for the origination of loan types generally considered to be high risk in nature, such as option adjustable rate mortgages, subprime loans, loans with initial "teaser" rates and loans with excessively high loan-to-value ratios. Residential real estate loans consist of first lien mortgages and equity credit lines, which generally require loan-to-collateral values of no more than 65% to 80% at inception. Revaluations of supporting collateral are obtained upon refinancing or default or when otherwise considered warranted. Collateral revaluations for mortgages are performed by independent third parties.

The commercial real estate class consists of commercial mortgages and construction, acquisition and development loans extended to experienced investors well known to Northern Trust. Underwriting standards generally reflect conservative loan-to-value ratios and debt service coverage requirements. Recourse to borrowers through guarantees is also commonly required.

Provision and Allowance for Credit Losses

The provision for credit losses is the charge to current period earnings that is determined by management, through a disciplined credit review process, to be the amount needed to maintain the allowance for credit losses at an appropriate level to absorb probable credit losses that have been identified with specific borrower relationships (specific loss component) and for probable losses that are believed to be inherent in the loan and lease portfolios, undrawn commitments and standby letters of credit (inherent loss component). Control processes and analyses employed to

evaluate the appropriateness of the allowance for credit losses are reviewed on at least an annual basis and modified as necessary.

Table of Contents

ASSET QUALITY (continued)

Provision and Allowance for Credit Losses (continued)

The amount of specific allowance is determined through an individual evaluation of loans and lending-related commitments considered impaired that is based on expected future cash flows, collateral value and other factors that may impact the borrower's ability to pay. The inherent component of the allowance addresses exposure relating to probable but unidentified credit-related losses. The inherent component of the allowance also covers the credit exposure associated with undrawn loan commitments and standby letters of credit. To estimate the allowance for credit losses on these instruments, management uses conversion rates to determine the estimated amount that will be drawn and assigns an allowance factor determined in accordance with the methodology utilized for outstanding loans. The provision for credit losses was \$1.5 million in the current quarter, compared to a provision credit of \$7.0 million in the prior-year quarter. Net charge-offs were \$0.1 million, resulting from \$2.2 million of charge-offs and \$2.1 million of recoveries, compared to \$3.2 million of net charge-offs in the prior-year quarter, resulting from \$5.0 million of charge-offs and \$1.8 million of recoveries. Residential real estate loans accounted for 84% and 81% of total nonperforming loans and leases at June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

Note 7 to the consolidated financial statements includes a table that details the changes in the allowance for credit losses during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 due to charge-offs, recoveries and provisions for credit losses.

The following table shows the specific portion of the allowance and the inherent portion of the allowance and its components by loan and lease segment and class.

Table 27: Allocation of the Allowance for Credit Losses

| | June 30, 2018 | | March | March 31, 2018 | | 2017 | |
|---|---------------|-----------|----------|----------------|---------------------|-------------------|--|
| | Percent of | | of | Percent of | of | Percent of | |
| (\$ In Millions) | Allowand | ceLoans t | o Allowa | nceLoans to | Allowan | AllowanceLoans to | |
| (\$ III WIIIIOIIS) | Amount | Total | Amoun | t Total | Amount | Total | |
| | | Loans | | Loans | | Loans | |
| Specific Allowance | \$6.1 | 9 | \$5.0 | _ % | \$8.7 | % | |
| Allocated Inherent Allowance | | | | | | | |
| Commercial | | | | | | | |
| Commercial and Institutional | 33.5 | 27 | 33.7 | 28 | 33.7 | 27 | |
| Commercial Real Estate | 41.8 | 11 | 40.9 | 11 | 58.7 | 11 | |
| Lease Financing, net | 0.2 | | 0.1 | 1 | _ | 1 | |
| Non-U.S. | | 6 | _ | 5 | _ | 6 | |
| Other | 2.1 | 2 | 1.5 | 1 | 1.1 | 1 | |
| Total Commercial | 77.6 | 46 | 76.2 | 46 | 93.5 | 46 | |
| Personal | | | | | | | |
| Residential Real Estate | 54.4 | 21 | 55.5 | 22 | 63.8 | 23 | |
| Private Client | 9.5 | 33 | 9.5 | 32 | 10.7 | 31 | |
| Other | 1.6 | | 1.6 | _ | 2.1 | | |
| Total Personal | 65.5 | 54 | 66.6 | 54 | 76.6 | 54 | |
| Total Allocated Inherent Allowance | \$143.1 | 100 9 | \$142.8 | 100 % | \$170.1 | 100 % | |
| Total Allowance for Credit Losses | \$149.2 | | \$147.8 | | \$178.8 | | |
| Allowance Assigned to | | | | | | | |
| Loans and Leases | \$127.2 | | \$125.4 | | \$153.8 | | |
| Undrawn Commitments and Standby Letters of Credit | 22.0 | | 22.4 | | 25.0 | | |
| Total Allowance for Credit Losses | \$149.2 | | \$147.8 | | \$178.8 | | |
| Allowance Assigned to Loans and Leases to Total | 0.39 % | | 0.39 | % | 0.46 % | | |
| Loans and Leases | 0.37 % | , | 0.39 | /0 | 0. 4 0 % | , | |

Table of Contents MARKET RISK MANAGEMENT

There are two types of market risk, interest rate risk and trading risk. Interest rate risk is the potential for movements in interest rates to cause changes in net interest income and the market value of equity. Trading risk is the potential for movements in market variables such as foreign exchange and interest rates to cause changes in the value of trading positions.

Northern Trust uses two primary measurement techniques to manage interest rate risk: Net Interest Income (NII) sensitivity and Market Value of Equity (MVE) sensitivity. NII sensitivity provides management with a short-term view of the impact of interest rate changes on NII. MVE sensitivity provides management with a long-term view of interest rate changes on MVE as of the period-end balance sheet. Both simulation models use the same initial market interest rates and product balances.

As part of its risk management activities, Northern Trust also measures daily the risk of loss associated with all non-U.S. currency positions using a Value-at-Risk (VaR) model and applying the historical simulation methodology. The following information about Northern Trust's management of market risk should be read in conjunction with the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017.

NII Sensitivity — The modeling of NII sensitivity incorporates on-balance-sheet positions, as well as derivative financial instruments (principally interest rate swaps) that are used to manage interest rate risk. Northern Trust uses market implied forward interest rates as the base case and measures the sensitivity (i.e., change) of a static balance sheet to changes in interest rates. Stress testing of interest rates is performed to include such scenarios as immediate parallel shocks to rates, nonparallel (i.e., twist) changes to yield curves that result in their becoming steeper or flatter, and changes to the relationship among the yield curves (i.e., basis risk).

The NII sensitivity analysis incorporates certain critical assumptions such as interest rates and client behaviors under changing rate environments. These assumptions are based on a combination of historical analysis and future expected pricing behavior. The simulation cannot precisely estimate NII sensitivity given uncertainty in the assumptions. The following key assumptions are incorporated into the simulation:

the balance sheet size and mix remains constant over the simulation horizon with maturing assets and liabilities replaced with instruments with similar terms as those that are maturing, with the exception of certain non-maturity deposits that are considered short-term in nature and therefore, receive a more conservative interest-bearing treatment; prepayments on mortgage loans and securities collateralized by mortgages are projected under each rate scenario using a third-party mortgage analytics system that incorporates market prepayment assumptions;

cash flows for structured securities are estimated using a third-party vendor in conjunction with the prepayments provided by the third-party mortgage analytics vendor;

nonmaturity deposit pricing and lives are projected based on Northern Trust's actual historical patterns and management judgment, depending upon the availability of historical data and current pricing strategies/or judgment; and

new business rates are based on current spreads to market indices.

The following table shows the estimated NII impact over the next twelve months of 100 and 200 basis point upward and 50 basis point downward movements in interest rates relative to forward rates. Each rate movement is assumed to occur gradually over a one-year period. Given the low level of interest rates, the simulation of NII for downward movements in interest rates of more than 50 basis points would not provide meaningful results.

Table 28: Net Interest Income Sensitivity as of June 30, 2018

(\$ In Millions)

(\$ In Millions)

(\$ In Millions)

Estimated Impact on Next Twelve Months of Net Interest Income

Increase in Interest Rates Above Market Implied Forward Rates

100 Basis Points

\$ 31

200 Basis Points

38

Decrease in Interest Rates Below Market Implied Forward Rates
50 Basis Points (55)

The NII sensitivity analysis does not incorporate any management actions that may be used to mit

The NII sensitivity analysis does not incorporate any management actions that may be used to mitigate adverse effects of actual interest rate movement. For that reason and others, the estimated impacts do not reflect the likely actual results but serve as estimates of interest rate risk. NII sensitivity is not comparable to actual results disclosed elsewhere or directly predictive of future values

<u>Table of Contents</u> MARKET RISK MANAGEMENT (continued)

of other measures provided. Further, the estimated impacts presented above are not directly comparable to those presented in documents filed with or furnished to the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission by the Corporation prior to its Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017 due to changes to client deposit pricing assumptions and the implementation of interest rate risk model enhancements.

MVE Sensitivity — MVE is defined as the present value of assets minus the present value of liabilities, net of the value of instruments that are used to manage the interest rate risk of balance sheet items. The potential effect of interest rate changes on MVE is derived from the impact of such changes on projected future cash flows and the present value of these cash flows and is then compared to the established limit. Northern Trust uses current market rates (and the future rates implied by these market rates) as the base case and measures MVE sensitivity under various rate scenarios. Stress testing of interest rates is performed to include such scenarios as immediate parallel shocks to rates, nonparallel (i.e., twist) changes to yield curves that result in their becoming steeper or flatter, and changes to the relationship among the yield curves (i.e., basis risk).

The MVE sensitivity analysis incorporates certain critical assumptions such as interest rates and client behaviors under changing rate environments. These assumptions are based on a combination of historical analysis and future expected pricing behavior. The simulation cannot precisely estimate MVE sensitivity given uncertainty in the assumptions. Many of the assumptions that apply to NII sensitivity also apply to MVE sensitivity simulations, with the following separate key assumptions incorporated into the MVE simulation:

the present value of nonmaturity deposits are estimated using remaining lives, which are based on a combination of Northern Trust's actual historical runoff patterns and management judgment — some balances are assumed to be core and have long lives while other balances are assumed to be temporary and have comparatively shorter lives; and the present values of most noninterest-related balances (such as receivables, equipment, and payables) are the same as their book values.

The following table shows the estimated impact on MVE of 100 and 200 basis point shocks up and a 50 basis point shock down from current market implied forward rates. Given the low level of interest rates and assumed interest rate floors as rates approach zero, the simulation of MVE for downward movements in interest rates of more than 50 basis points would not provide meaningful results.

Table 29: Market Value of Equity Sensitivity as of June 30, 2018

(\$ In Millions)

(\$ In Millions)

Estimated Impact on Market Value of Equity

Increase in Interest Rates Above Market Implied Forward Rates

100 Basis Points

\$ 150

200 Basis Points

(111)

Decrease in Interest Rates Below Market Implied Forward Rates

50 Basis Points

(288)

The MVE simulations do not incorporate any management actions that may be used to mitigate adverse effects of actual interest rate movements. For that reason and others, the estimated impacts do not reflect the likely actual results but serve as estimates of interest rate risk. MVE sensitivity is not comparable to actual results disclosed elsewhere or directly predictive of future values of other measures provided. Further, the estimated impacts presented above are not directly comparable to those presented in documents filed with or furnished to the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission by the Corporation prior to its Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017 due to changes to client deposit pricing assumptions and the implementation of interest rate risk model enhancements. During the period ended June 30, 2018, Northern Trust did not exceed its NII sensitivity limits or its MVE sensitivity limits.

Foreign Currency Value-At-Risk (VaR) — Northern Trust measures daily the risk of loss associated with all non-U.S. currency positions using a VaR model and applying the historical simulation methodology. This statistical model

provides estimates, based on a variety of high confidence levels, of the potential loss in value that might be incurred if an adverse shift in non-U.S. currency exchange rates were to occur over a small number of days. The model incorporates foreign currency and interest rate volatilities and correlations in price movements among the currencies. VaR is computed for each trading desk and for the global portfolio.

Table of Contents

MARKET RISK MANAGEMENT (continued)

Northern Trust monitors several variations of the foreign exchange VaR measures to meet specific regulatory and internal management needs. Variations include different methodologies (historical, variance-covariance and Monte Carlo), equally weighted and exponentially weighted volatilities, horizons of one day and ten days, confidence levels ranging from 95% to 99.95% and look back periods of one year and four years. Those alternative measures provide management an array of corroborating metrics and alternative perspectives on Northern Trust's market risks. The table below presents the levels of total regulatory VaR and its subcomponents for global foreign currency in the years indicated below, based on the historical simulation methodology, a 99% confidence level, a one-day horizon and equally weighted volatility. The total VaR for foreign currency is typically less than the sum of its two components due to diversification benefits derived from the two subcomponents.

Table 30: Foreign Currency Value-At-Risk

| | | | | | roreign | | |
|------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|---------|--------|--|
| | Total VaR | | Foreign E | Exchange | | | |
| | (Spot and | Forward) | Spot VaR | | Forw | ard | |
| | | | | | VaR | | |
| | Juna 20 | Marah | June 30, | Marah | June | March | |
| (\$ In Millions) | Julie 30, | | | March | 30, | 31, | |
| , | 2018 | 31, 2018 | 2018 | 31, 2018 | | 2018 | |
| High | \$ 0.2 | \$ 0.3 | \$ 0.2 | \$ 0.2 | \$0.2 | \$ 0.3 | |
| Low | 0.1 | 0.1 | _ | _ | | 0.1 | |
| Average | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.2 | |
| Quarter-End | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | | 0.1 | 0.1 | |

RECONCILIATION OF CERTAIN REPORTED ITEMS TO FULLY TAXABLE EQUIVALENTS

The following table presents a reconciliation of interest income, net interest income, net interest margin, and revenue prepared in accordance with GAAP to such measures on an FTE basis, which are non-GAAP financial measures. Management believes this presentation provides a clearer indication of these financial measures for comparative purposes. When adjusted to an FTE basis, yields on taxable, nontaxable and partially taxable assets are comparable; however, the adjustment to an FTE basis has no impact on net income.

Table 31: Reconciliation of Reported Revenue and Net Interest Income to Fully Taxable Equivalent

| | Three Mont | hs Ended | | | | |
|--|---|--------------------------|-------------------------------|---|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| | June 30, 20 | 18 | | June 30, 20 | 17 | |
| (\$ In Millions) | Reported | FTE Adj. | FTE | Reported | FTE Adj. | FTE |
| Interest Income | \$567.7 | \$ 9.3 | \$577.0 | \$417.2 | \$ 8.9 | \$426.1 |
| Interest Expense | 154.4 | _ | 154.4 | 75.7 | _ | 75.7 |
| Net Interest Income | \$413.3 | \$ 9.3 | \$422.6 | \$341.5 | \$ 8.9 | \$350.4 |
| Net Interest Margin | 1.45 % | | 1.48 % | 1.25 % | | 1.28 % |
| | | | | | | |
| Revenue | \$1,506.1 | \$ 9.3 | \$1,515.4 | \$1,321.2 | \$ 8.9 | \$1,330.1 |
| | Six Months | Ended | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| | June 30, 20 | 18 | | June 30, 20 | 17 | |
| (\$ In Millions) | June 30, 20 Reported | 18 FTE Adj. | FTE | June 30, 20 Reported | 17 FTE Adj. | FTE |
| (\$ In Millions) Interest Income | * | | FTE \$1,091.6 | * | | FTE \$845.3 |
| ` ' | Reported | FTE Adj. | | Reported | FTE Adj. | |
| Interest Income | Reported \$1,073.6 276.3 | FTE Adj. | \$1,091.6 | Reported \$827.5 | FTE Adj. | \$845.3 |
| Interest Income Interest Expense | Reported \$1,073.6 276.3 \$797.3 | FTE Adj. \$ 18.0 — | \$1,091.6 276.3 \$815.3 | Reported \$827.5 132.5 | FTE Adj. \$ 17.8 — | \$845.3 132.5 |
| Interest Income Interest Expense Net Interest Income | Reported \$1,073.6 276.3 \$797.3 | FTE Adj. \$ 18.0 — | \$1,091.6 276.3 \$815.3 | Reported \$827.5 132.5 \$695.0 | FTE Adj. \$ 17.8 — | \$845.3 132.5 \$712.8 |
| Interest Income Interest Expense Net Interest Income | Reported \$1,073.6 276.3 \$797.3 | FTE Adj. \$ 18.0 — | \$1,091.6 276.3 \$815.3 | Reported \$827.5 132.5 \$695.0 | FTE Adj. \$ 17.8 — | \$845.3 132.5 \$712.8 |

<u>Table of Contents</u> RECENT ACCOUNTING PRONOUNCEMENTS AND DEVELOPMENTS

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, "Leases (Topic 842)" (ASU 2016-02). ASU 2016-02 introduces a lessee model that brings most leases on the balance sheet, with certain specified scope exceptions. Specifically within the lessee model under ASU 2016-02, a lessee is required to recognize on the balance sheet a liability to make future lease payments, known as the lease liability, and a right-of-use asset (ROU asset) representing its right to use the underlying asset over the lease term. ASU 2016-02 is effective for interim and annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018, with certain practical expedients available. Northern Trust has established an overall governance structure and a detailed project plan for its implementation efforts, has taken further action in defining the future operating model for lease accounting and is continuing to refine its lease inventory. Although Northern Trust is currently assessing the impact of ASU 2016-02, it is expected to have a significant impact on Northern Trust's consolidated financial condition, with the most significant changes related to the recognition of ROU assets and lease liabilities for operating leases. ASU 2016-02 is not expected to impact significantly Northern Trust's consolidated results of operations.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-13, "Financial Instruments - Credit Losses (Topic 326): Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments" (ASU 2016-13). ASU 2016-13 significantly changes the way impairment of financial instruments is recognized by requiring immediate recognition of estimated credit losses expected to occur over the remaining life of financial instruments. The main provisions of ASU 2016-13 include (1) replacing the "incurred loss" approach under current GAAP with an "expected loss" model for instruments measured at amortized cost, (2) requiring entities to record an allowance for available-for-sale debt securities rather than reduce the carrying amount of the investments, as is required by the other-than-temporary-impairment model under current GAAP, and (3) a simplified accounting model for purchased credit-impaired debt securities and loans. ASU 2016-13 is effective for interim and annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2019, although early adoption is permitted. Northern Trust has established a working group across various functions, an overall governance structure, and has finalized a detailed project plan for its implementation efforts. Further, Northern Trust assessed its current inventory of underlying credit models along with the suitability of these models for the overall expected loss impairment model under ASU 2016-13 and prepared a comprehensive gap analysis. Northern Trust is currently focusing efforts on development activities for new and modified credit loss models and defining its forecasting process. Northern Trust continues to evaluate specific application issues and the overall impact of the adoption of ASU 2016-13.

Table of Contents FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This report may include statements which constitute "forward-looking statements" within the meaning of the safe harbor provisions of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. Forward-looking statements are identified typically by words or phrases such as "believe," "expect," "anticipate," "intend," "estimate," "project," "likely," "plan," "goal, "strategy," and similar expressions or future or conditional verbs such as "may," "will," "should," "would," and "could." Forward-looking statements include statements, other than those related to historical facts, that relate to Northern Trust's financial results and outlook; capital adequacy; dividend policy and share repurchase program; accounting estimates and assumptions; credit quality including allowance levels; future pension plan contributions; effective tax rate; anticipated expense levels; contingent liabilities; acquisitions; strategies; industry trends; and expectations regarding the impact of accounting pronouncements and legislation. These statements are based on Northern Trust's current beliefs and expectations of future events or future results, and involve risks and uncertainties that are difficult to predict and subject to change. These statements are also based on assumptions about many important factors, including:

financial market disruptions or economic recession, whether in the United States, Europe, the Middle East, Asia or other regions;

volatility or changes in financial markets, including debt and equity markets, that impact the value, liquidity, or credit ratings of financial assets in general, or financial assets held in particular investment funds or client portfolios, including those funds, portfolios, and other financial assets with respect to which Northern Trust has taken, or may in the future take, actions to provide asset value stability or additional liquidity;

the impact of equity markets on fee revenue;

the downgrade of U.S. government-issued and other securities;

changes in foreign exchange trading client volumes and volatility in foreign currency exchange rates, changes in the valuation of the U.S. dollar relative to other currencies in which Northern Trust records revenue or accrues expenses, and Northern Trust's success in assessing and mitigating the risks arising from all such changes and volatility; a decline in the value of securities held in Northern Trust's investment portfolio, particularly asset-backed securities, the liquidity and pricing of which may be negatively impacted by periods of economic turmoil and financial market disruptions;

Northern Trust's ability to address operating risks, including those related to cyber-security, data security, human errors or omissions, pricing or valuation of securities, fraud, systems performance or defects, systems interruptions, and breakdowns in processes or internal controls;

Northern Trust's success in responding to and investing in changes and advancements in technology;

a significant downgrade of any of Northern Trust's debt ratings;

the health and soundness of the financial institutions and other counterparties with which Northern Trust conducts business;

uncertainties inherent in the complex and subjective judgments required to assess credit risk and establish appropriate allowances therefor;

the pace and extent of continued globalization of investment activity and growth in worldwide financial assets; thanges in interest rates or in the monetary or other policies of various regulatory authorities or central banks; changes in the legal, regulatory and enforcement framework and oversight applicable to financial institutions, including Northern Trust;

increased costs of compliance and other risks associated with changes in regulation, the current regulatory environment, and areas of increased regulatory emphasis and oversight in the United States and other countries, such as anti-money laundering, anti-bribery, and client privacy;

failure to address in the Corporation's resolution plan submitted in December 2017 the "shortcomings" jointly identified by the Federal Reserve Board and FDIC in the resolution plan submitted by the Corporation in December 2015; failure to satisfy regulatory standards or to obtain regulatory approvals when required, including for the use and distribution of capital;

changes in tax laws, accounting requirements or interpretations and other legislation in the United States or other countries that could affect Northern Trust or its clients including with respect to the adoption of the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act;

geopolitical risks and the risks of extraordinary events such as natural disasters, terrorist events and war, and the responses of the United States and other countries to those events;

the pending departure of the United Kingdom from the European Union, commonly referred to as "Brexit," and any negative effects thereof on global economic conditions, global financial markets, and our business and results of operations;

changes in the nature and activities of Northern Trust's competition;

Northern Trust's success in maintaining existing business and continuing to generate new business in existing and targeted markets and its ability to deploy deposits in a profitable manner consistent with its liquidity requirements;

Table of Contents

FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS (continued)

Northern Trust's ability to address the complex needs of a global client base and manage compliance with legal, tax, regulatory and other requirements;

Northern Trust's ability to maintain a product mix that achieves acceptable margins;

Northern Trust's ability to continue to generate investment results that satisfy clients and to develop an array of investment products;

Northern Trust's success in recruiting and retaining the necessary personnel to support business growth and expansion and maintain sufficient expertise to support increasingly complex products and services;

Northern Trust's success in implementing its expense management initiatives, including its "Value for Spend" initiative; uncertainties inherent in Northern Trust's assumptions concerning its pension plan, including discount rates and expected contributions, returns and payouts;

Northern Trust's success in continuing to enhance its risk management practices and controls and managing risks inherent in its businesses, including credit risk, operational risk, market and liquidity risk, fiduciary risk, compliance risk and strategic risk;

risks and uncertainties inherent in the litigation and regulatory process, including the possibility that losses may be in excess of Northern Trust's recorded liability and estimated range of possible loss for litigation exposures; risks associated with being a holding company, including Northern Trust's dependence on dividends from its principal subsidiary;

the risk of damage to Northern Trust's reputation which may undermine the confidence of clients, counterparties, rating agencies, and stockholders; and

other factors identified elsewhere in the Corporation's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017, including those factors described in Item 1A, "Risk Factors," and other filings with the SEC, all of which are available on Northern Trust's website.

Actual results may differ materially from those expressed or implied by forward-looking statements. The information contained herein is current only as of the date of that information. All forward-looking statements included in this document are based upon information presently available, and Northern Trust assumes no obligation to update its forward-looking statements.

Table of Contents

Item 1. Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited)

| CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS NORTHERN TRUST CORPOR | | |
|---|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| (In Millions Except Share Information) | June 30, 2018 (Unaudited) | December 31, 2017 |
| Assets | (Chadanca) | |
| Cash and Due from Banks | \$4,888.1 | \$4,518.1 |
| Federal Reserve and Other Central Bank Deposits | 33,422.0 | 40,479.1 |
| Interest-Bearing Deposits with Banks | 4,161.2 | 5,611.9 |
| Federal Funds Sold and Securities Purchased under Agreements to Resell | 1,427.8 | 1,324.3 |
| Debt Securities | | |
| Available for Sale | 35,184.5 | 33,742.1 |
| Held to Maturity (Fair value of \$14,157.8 and \$13,010.9) | 14,225.1 | 13,049.0 |
| Trading Account | 0.7 | 0.5 |
| Total Debt Securities | 49,410.3 | 46,791.6 |
| Loans and Leases | 14.005.7 | 145500 |
| Commercial | 14,885.7 | 14,558.0 |
| Personal Tatal Lagrange and Lagrange (Nat of programs dispares of \$20.4 and \$25.5) | 17,587.5 | 18,034.2 |
| Total Loans and Leases (Net of unearned income of \$20.4 and \$35.5) | 32,473.2 | 32,592.2 |
| Allowance for Credit Losses Assigned to Loans and Leases Buildings and Equipment | (127.2) 428.8 | (131.2 464.6 |
| Client Security Settlement Receivables | 2,027.3 | 1,647.0 |
| Goodwill | 673.5 | 605.6 |
| Other Assets | 6,321.2 | 4,687.3 |
| Total Assets | \$135,106.2 | \$138,590.5 |
| Liabilities | φ133,100.2 | Ψ130,370.3 |
| Deposits | | |
| Demand and Other Noninterest-Bearing | \$18,162.6 | \$18,712.2 |
| Savings, Money Market and Other Interest-Bearing | 15,492.1 | 16,975.3 |
| Savings Certificates and Other Time | 855.2 | 1,152.3 |
| Non U.S. Offices — Noninterest-Bearing | 8,503.6 | 9,878.8 |
| — Interest-Bearing | 63,511.4 | 65,672.2 |
| Total Deposits | 106,524.9 | 112,390.8 |
| Federal Funds Purchased | 3,222.0 | 2,286.1 |
| Securities Sold Under Agreements to Repurchase | 981.3 | 834.0 |
| Other Borrowings | 7,635.1 | 6,051.1 |
| Senior Notes | 1,497.7 | 1,497.3 |
| Long-Term Debt | 1,410.6 | 1,449.5 |
| Floating Rate Capital Debt | 277.5 | 277.5 |
| Other Liabilities | 3,199.5 | 3,588.0 |
| Total Liabilities | 124,748.6 | 128,374.3 |
| Stockholders' Equity | | |
| Preferred Stock, No Par Value; Authorized 10,000,000 shares: | 200 5 | 200 5 |
| Series C, outstanding shares of 16,000 | 388.5 | 388.5 |
| Series D, outstanding shares of 5,000 | 493.5 | 493.5 |
| Common Stock, \$1.66 2/3 Par Value; Authorized 560,000,000 shares; | 408.6 | 108 6 |
| Outstanding shares of 223,281,786 and 226,126,674 | 1,050.2 | 408.6 |
| Additional Paid-In Capital | 1,030.4 | 1,047.2 |

)

| Retained Earnings | 10,262.5 | 9,685.1 | |
|--|-------------|------------|----|
| Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss | (508.1 |) (414.3 |) |
| Treasury Stock (21,889,738 and 19,044,850 shares, at cost) | (1,737.6 |) (1,392.4 |) |
| Total Stockholders' Equity | 10,357.6 | 10,216.2 | |
| Total Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity | \$135,106.2 | \$138,590. | .5 |

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

Table of Contents

| CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF INCOME (UNAUDITED) | Y NODTHEDN TRIPT CORDOD ATION |
|---|-------------------------------|
| (UNAUDITED) | NORTHERN TRUST CORPORATION |

| | | Months | | hs Ended June |
|--|-------------|------------------------|-------------|------------------------|
| | | June 30, | 30, | |
| (In Millions Except Share Information) | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| Noninterest Income | | | | |
| Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees | | \$ 848.2 | \$1,880.6 | \$ 1,656.4 |
| Foreign Exchange Trading Income | 78.9 | 49.9 | 157.4 | 98.0 |
| Treasury Management Fees | 13.5 | 14.9 | 27.5 | 29.6 |
| Security Commissions and Trading Income | 26.1 | 24.1 | 53.3 | 44.6 |
| Other Operating Income | 31.4 | 43.0 | 66.2 | 82.7 |
| Investment Security Gains (Losses), net (Note) | _ | (0.4 | (0.2) |) (0.7 |
| Total Noninterest Income | 1,092.8 | 3 979.7 | 2,184.8 | 1,910.6 |
| Net Interest Income | | | | |
| Interest Income | 567.7 | 417.2 | 1,073.6 | 827.5 |
| Interest Expense | 154.4 | 75.7 | 276.3 | 132.5 |
| Net Interest Income | 413.3 | 341.5 | 797.3 | 695.0 |
| Provision for Credit Losses | 1.5 | (7.0 | (1.5 | (8.0) |
| Net Interest Income after Provision for Credit Losses | 411.8 | 348.5 | 798.8 | 703.0 |
| Noninterest Expense | | | | |
| Compensation | 454.7 | 432.5 | 926.4 | 858.3 |
| Employee Benefits | 88.8 | 75.6 | 180.5 | 153.4 |
| Outside Services | 185.6 | 167.0 | 357.0 | 320.1 |
| Equipment and Software | 144.2 | 133.7 | 284.2 | 261.0 |
| Occupancy | 48.8 | 46.3 | 100.3 | 91.7 |
| Other Operating Expense | 75.3 | 82.3 | 144.3 | 147.4 |
| Total Noninterest Expense | 997.4 | 937.4 | 1,992.7 | 1,831.9 |
| Income before Income Taxes | 507.2 | 390.8 | 990.9 | 781.7 |
| Provision for Income Taxes | 116.8 | 122.9 | 218.9 | 237.7 |
| Net Income | | \$ 267.9 | \$772.0 | \$ 544.0 |
| Preferred Stock Dividends | 5.9 | 5.9 | 23.2 | 26.6 |
| Net Income Applicable to Common Stock | | \$ 262.0 | \$748.8 | \$ 517.4 |
| Per Common Share | Ψ304.3 | Ψ 202.0 | ψ / τυ.υ | ψ 517. ч |
| Net Income — Basic | \$1.69 | \$ 1.12 | \$3.28 | \$ 2.22 |
| — Diluted | 1.68 | 1.12 | 3.26 | 2.21 |
| Average Number of Common Shares Outstanding | 1.00 | 1.12 | 3.20 | 2.21 |
| — Basic | 224,20 | 7 25290 ,196,53 | 1 224,940,3 | 30 8 29,128,414 |
| — Diluted | 225 61 | 120007627 92 | 2 226 225 / | 10 2 20 624 269 |
| — Diluted | 223,01 | 1,62. | 3 220,323,4 | 19 2 30,634,368 |
| Note: Changes in Other-Than-Temporary-Impairment (OTTI) Losses | \$ — | \$ — | \$(0.2 | \$ (0.1) |
| Other Security Gains (Losses), net | | (0.4) | _ | (0.6) |
| Investment Security Gains (Losses), net | \$ | \$ (0.4 | \$(0.2 | \$ (0.7) |
| CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF | NOI | RTHERN TR | ` ' | |
| COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (UNAUDITED) | | RPORATION | | |
| | | | Six Months | 3 |
| | | ed June 30, | | |
| | | | | - 7 |

| (In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
|--|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| Net Income | \$390.4 | \$267.9 | \$772.0 | \$544.0 |
| Other Comprehensive Income (Loss) (Net of Tax and Reclassifications) | | | | |
| Net Unrealized (Losses) Gains on Debt Securities Available for Sale | (19.9) | 1.6 | (74.9) | 20.9 |
| Net Unrealized (Losses) Gains on Cash Flow Hedges | (3.5) | 2.3 | (7.2) | (3.0) |
| Foreign Currency Translation Adjustments | 13.6 | 4.9 | 0.5 | 6.9 |
| Pension and Other Postretirement Benefit Adjustments | 7.4 | 4.3 | 13.1 | 6.3 |
| Other Comprehensive Income | (2.4) | 13.1 | (68.5) | 31.1 |
| Comprehensive Income | \$388.0 | \$281.0 | \$703.5 | \$575.1 |
| See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements. | | | | |

Table of Contents

| CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN STOCKHOLDERS' | NODTHE | DM TDIIC | т | |
|--|-----------|------------|-------------|-----|
| EQUITY | CORPOR | RN TRUS | 1 | |
| (UNAUDITED) | CORPOR | ATION | | |
| | | Six Mont | hs Ended Ju | ine |
| (In Millions) | | 2018 | 2017 | |
| Preferred Stock | | | | |
| Series C, Balance at January 1 and June 30 | | \$388.5 | \$388.5 | |
| Series D, Balance at January 1 and June 30 | | 493.5 | 493.5 | |
| Balance at January 1 and June 30 | | 882.0 | 882.0 | |
| Common Stock | | | | |
| Balance at January 1 and June 30 | | 408.6 | 408.6 | |
| Additional Paid-in Capital | | | | |
| Balance at January 1 | | 1,047.3 | 1,035.8 | |
| Treasury Stock Transactions — Stock Options and Awards | | (86.7 |) (93.6 |) |
| Stock Options and Awards — Amortization | | 89.6 | 84.8 | |
| Balance at June 30 | | 1,050.2 | 1,027.0 | |
| Retained Earnings | | | | |
| Balance at January 1 | | 9,685.1 | 8,908.4 | |
| Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensi | ve Income | 25.3 | | |
| Change in Accounting Principle | | (4.5 |) — | |
| Net Income | | 772.0 | 544.0 | |
| Dividends Declared — Common Stock | | (192.2 |) (178.3 |) |
| Dividends Declared — Preferred Stock | | (23.2 |) (26.6 |) |
| Balance at June 30 | | 10,262.5 | 9,247.5 | |
| Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss) | | | | |
| Balance at January 1 | | (414.3 |) (370.0 |) |
| Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensi | ve Income | (25.3 |) — | |
| Net Unrealized (Losses) Gains on Debt Securities Available for Sale | | (74.9 |) 20.9 | |
| Net Unrealized Losses on Cash Flow Hedges | | (7.2 |) (3.0 |) |
| Foreign Currency Translation Adjustments | | 0.5 | 6.9 | |
| Pension and Other Postretirement Benefit Adjustments | | 13.1 | 6.3 | |
| Balance at June 30 | | (508.1 |) (338.9 |) |
| Treasury Stock | | | | |
| Balance at January 1 | | (1,392.4 |) (1,094.4 |) |
| Stock Options and Awards | | 108.6 | 163.8 | |
| Stock Purchased | | (453.8 |) (227.7 |) |
| Balance at June 30 | | (1,737.6 |) (1,158.3 |) |
| Total Stockholders' Equity at June 30 | | \$10,357.6 | \$10,067. | 9 |
| | | | | |

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

Table of Contents

CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS (UNAUDITED) NORTHERN TRUST CORPORATION

| | Six Month June 30, | ns Ended | |
|---|-----------------------|----------------|---|
| (In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | |
| Cash Flows from Operating Activities: | | | |
| Net Income | \$772.0 | \$544.0 | |
| Adjustments to Reconcile Net Income to Net Cash (Used in) Provided by Operating Activities: | | | |
| Investment Security Losses, net | 0.2 | 0.7 | |
| Amortization and Accretion of Securities and Unearned Income, net | 58.8 | 53.0 | |
| Provision for Credit Losses | | 0.8) |) |
| Depreciation on Buildings and Equipment | 55.2 | 47.0 | |
| Amortization of Computer Software | 169.1 | 154.7 | |
| Amortization of Intangibles | 8.9 | 4.7 | |
| Pension Plan Contributions | (71.9) | (11.5 |) |
| Change in Receivables | | • |) |
| Change in Interest Payable | 12.7 | 8.3 | |
| Change in Collateral With Derivative Counterparties, net | | 477.0 | |
| Other Operating Activities, net | | • |) |
| Net Cash (Used in) Provided by Operating Activities | (145.5) | 312.6 | |
| Cash Flows from Investing Activities: | | | |
| Net Change in Federal Funds Sold and Securities Purchased under Agreements to Resell | | • |) |
| Change in Interest-Bearing Deposits with Banks | 1,303.6 | 116.1 | |
| Net Change in Federal Reserve and Other Central Bank Deposits | 6,794.9 | (1,804.9 | |
| Purchases of Debt Securities — Held to Maturity | (10,641.4) | |) |
| Proceeds from Maturity and Redemption of Debt Securities — Held to Maturity | 9,244.6 | 4,857.7 | |
| Purchases of Debt Securities — Available for Sale | | (4,388.5 |) |
| Proceeds from Sale, Maturity and Redemption of Debt Securities — Available for Sale | 4,036.3 | 5,819.9 | |
| Change in Loans and Leases | 101.6 | 531.8 | |
| Purchases of Buildings and Equipment | | |) |
| Purchases and Development of Computer Software | | |) |
| Change in Client Security Settlement Receivables | | ` |) |
| Acquisition of a Business, Net of Cash Received | |) _ | |
| Other Investing Activities, net | | 282.5 | |
| Net Cash Provided by (Used in) Investing Activities | 3,617.5 | (298.0 |) |
| Cash Flows from Financing Activities: | | | |
| Change in Deposits | (4,998.5) | | |
| Change in Federal Funds Purchased | 935.9 | (46.1 |) |
| Change in Securities Sold under Agreements to Repurchase | 147.8 | (10.0 |) |
| Change in Short-Term Other Borrowings | 1,603.1 | (1,060.2 |) |
| Proceeds from Senior Notes and Long-Term Debt | | 350.0 | , |
| Repayments of Senior Notes and Long-Term Debt | <u> </u> | (5.3 |) |
| Treasury Stock Purchased | | ` |) |
| Net Proceeds from Stock Options | 21.9 | 70.3 | , |
| Cash Dividends Paid on Common Stock | ` , | (174.2 |) |
| Cash Dividends Paid on Preferred Stock | (23.2) | (26.6 |) |
| Other Financing Activities, net | _ | 0.1 | |

| Net Cash (Used in) Provided by Financing Activities | (2,956.4) | 184.1 |
|--|-----------|-----------|
| Effect of Foreign Currency Exchange Rates on Cash | (145.6 | 164.1 |
| Change in Cash and Due from Banks | 370.0 | 362.8 |
| Cash and Due from Banks at Beginning of Year | 4,518.1 | 5,332.0 |
| Cash and Due from Banks at End of Period | \$4,888.1 | \$5,694.8 |
| Supplemental Disclosures of Cash Flow Information: | | |
| Interest Paid | \$263.4 | \$124.0 |
| Income Taxes Paid | 200.7 | 312.2 |
| Transfers from Loans to OREO | 2.5 | 5.8 |
| See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements. | | |

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited)

Note 1 – Basis of Presentation

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Northern Trust Corporation (the Corporation) and its wholly-owned subsidiary, The Northern Trust Company (the Bank), and various other wholly-owned subsidiaries of the Corporation and the Bank. Throughout the notes, the term "Northern Trust" refers to the Corporation and its subsidiaries. Intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation. The consolidated financial statements, as of and for the periods ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, have not been audited by the Corporation's independent registered public accounting firm. In the opinion of management, all accounting entries and adjustments, including normal recurring accruals, necessary for a fair presentation of the financial position and the results of operations for the interim periods have been made. The accounting and financial reporting policies of Northern Trust conform to U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) and reporting practices prescribed by the banking industry. The consolidated statements of income include results of acquired subsidiaries from the dates of acquisition. Certain amounts in prior periods have been reclassified to conform with the current year's presentation. For a description of Northern Trust's significant accounting policies, refer to Note 1 of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements in the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2017.

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2014-09, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)" (ASU 2014-09). The primary objective of ASU 2014-09 is revenue recognition that represents the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. Northern Trust adopted ASU 2014-09 using the modified retrospective method applied to contracts not yet completed as of the date of adoption. Results for reporting periods beginning January 1, 2018 are presented under ASU 2014-09, including certain changes to gross versus net presentation, whereas prior period amounts are not adjusted. The impact of adopting ASU 2014-09 resulted in a \$4.0 million reduction in retained earnings. Please refer to Note 14 – "Revenue from Contracts with Clients" for further information.

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2016-01, "Financial Instruments - Overall (Subtopic 825-10): Recognition and Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities" (ASU 2016-01). ASU 2016-01 requires equity investments (except those accounted for under the equity method or those that result in consolidation) to be measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in net income unless a policy election is made for investments without readily determinable fair values. Additionally, ASU 2016-01 requires public entities to use the exit price notion when measuring the fair value of financial instruments for disclosure purposes and eliminates the requirement to disclose the method(s) and significant assumptions used to estimate the fair value of financial instruments measured at amortized cost on the balance sheet. Furthermore, it requires separate presentation of financial assets and financial liabilities by measurement category and form of financial asset on the balance sheet or in the accompanying notes to the financial statements. The impact of adopting ASU 2016-01 resulted in a \$0.5 million reduction in retained earnings.

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2016-15, "Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments" (ASU 2016-15). ASU 2016-15 provides guidance on eight specific cash flow issues, thereby reducing diversity in practice in how certain cash receipts and cash payments are presented and classified in the statement of cash flows. Upon adoption of ASU 2016-15, there was no significant impact to Northern Trust's consolidated statement of cash flows.

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2016-16, "Income Taxes (Topic 740): Intra-Entity Transfers of Assets Other Than Inventory" (ASU 2016-16). ASU 2016-16 requires an entity to recognize the income tax consequences of intra-entity transfers of assets (excluding inventory) in the period in which the transfer occurs. Upon

adoption of ASU 2016-16, there was no significant impact to Northern Trust's consolidated financial condition or results of operations.

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2016-18, "Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Restricted Cash (a consensus of the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force)" (ASU 2016-18). ASU 2016-18 requires an entity to include amounts generally described as restricted cash and cash equivalents with cash and cash equivalents when reconciling beginning and end of period total cash balances in the statement of cash flows and as a result, transfers between cash and cash equivalents, and restricted cash and cash equivalents, will not be presented in the statement of cash flows as cash flow activities. Additionally, if the balance sheet includes more than one line item for cash, cash equivalents, restricted cash, and restricted cash and cash equivalents, an entity is required to disclose a reconciliation between the balance sheet and the statement of cash flows. Furthermore, if restricted cash and cash equivalents are material, an entity must disclose information about the nature of restrictions. Upon adoption of ASU 2016-18, there was no significant impact to Northern Trust's consolidated statement of cash flows.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2017-01, "Business Combinations (Topic 805): Clarifying the Definition of a Business" (ASU 2017-01). ASU 2017-01 clarifies the definition of a business with the objective of adding guidance to assist companies with evaluating whether transactions should be accounted for as acquisitions (or disposals) of assets or businesses. The amendments in ASU 2017-01 provide a more robust framework to use in determining when a set of assets and activities is a business. Upon adoption of ASU 2017-01, there was no significant impact to Northern Trust's consolidated financial condition or results of operations.

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2017-05, "Other Income-Gains and Losses from the Derecognition of Nonfinancial Assets (Subtopic 610-20): Clarifying the Scope of Asset Derecognition Guidance and Accounting for Partial Sales of Nonfinancial Assets" (ASU 2017-05). ASU 2017-05 clarifies that an in substance nonfinancial asset is an asset or group of assets for which substantially all of the fair value consists of nonfinancial assets and the group or subsidiary is not a business. Transfers of nonfinancial assets to another entity in exchange for a noncontrolling ownership interest in that entity will be accounted for under Accounting Standards Codification 610-20 - Gains and Losses from the Derecognition of Nonfinancial Assets. ASU 2017-05 also impacts the accounting for partial sales of nonfinancial assets, and provides that when an entity transfers its controlling financial interest in a nonfinancial asset, but retains a noncontrolling ownership interest, the entity will measure the retained interest at fair value. This will result in full gain or loss recognition upon the sale of a controlling interest in a nonfinancial asset. Upon adoption of ASU 2017-05, there was no significant impact to Northern Trust's consolidated financial condition or results of operations.

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2017-07, "Compensation-Retirement Benefits (Topic 715): Improving the Presentation of Net Periodic Pension Cost and Net Periodic Postretirement Benefit Cost" (ASU 2017-07). Under previous GAAP, net benefit cost on pension and postretirement benefit plans included multiple components, including current-period employee service cost, interest cost on the obligation, expected return on plan assets, and amortization of various amounts deferred from previous periods. ASU 2017-07 requires the bifurcation of the net benefit cost by presenting separately the service cost component from the other components of net benefit cost. Northern Trust provides a detailed breakdown of its net periodic pension costs components including a reference to the respective income statement line in the footnotes and therefore there were no changes to the presentation of net periodic pension costs in the results of operations upon adoption of ASU 2017-07.

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2017-09, "Compensation - Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Scope of Modification Accounting" (ASU 2017-09). ASU 2017-09 clarifies which types of changes to share-based payment awards are in scope of modification accounting. ASU 2017-09 also provides clarification related to the fair value assessment with respect to determining whether a fair value calculation is required and the appropriate unit of account to apply. Upon adoption of ASU 2017-09, there was no impact to Northern Trust's consolidated financial condition or results of operations.

On January 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2018-02, "Income Statement - Reporting Comprehensive Income (Topic 220): Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income" (ASU 2018-02). The amendments in ASU 2018-02 allow an entity to elect to reclassify from accumulated other comprehensive income to retained earnings the stranded tax effects resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act. ASU 2018-02 is effective for interim and annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2018, however early adoption is permitted. The amendments in ASU 2018-02 may be applied either in the period of adoption or retrospectively to each period (or periods) in which the effect of the change in the U.S. federal corporate income tax rate in the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act is recognized. Upon adoption of ASU 2018-02, Northern Trust elected to reclassify \$25.3 million of income tax effects from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act from accumulated other comprehensive income to retained earnings. In the normal course, it is Northern Trust's policy to release income tax effects from accumulated other comprehensive income on an aggregate portfolio basis. Please refer to Note 12 – "Accumulated Other

Comprehensive Income (Loss)" for further information.

On April 1, 2018, Northern Trust adopted ASU No. 2017-12, "Derivatives and Hedging (Topic 815): Targeted Improvements to Accounting for Hedging Activities" (ASU 2017-12). The main provisions of ASU 2017-12 are intended to align better an entity's risk management activities and financial reporting for hedging relationships through changes to both the designation and measurement guidance for qualifying hedging relationships. ASU 2017-12 eliminates the requirement to measure and report hedge ineffectiveness separately and generally requires the entire change in the fair value of a hedging instrument to be presented in the same income statement line as the hedged item. Further, ASU 2017-12 eases certain documentation and assessment requirements and modifies the accounting for components excluded from the assessment of hedge effectiveness. Northern Trust currently applies the "shortcut" method of accounting available under US GAAP for substantially all fair value hedges and other aspects of Northern Trust's current hedge accounting program and therefore upon adoption of ASU 2017-12, there was no significant impact to Northern Trust's consolidated financial condition or results of operations.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 3 – Fair Value Measurements

Fair Value Hierarchy. The following describes the hierarchy of valuation inputs (Levels 1, 2, and 3) used to measure fair value and the primary valuation methodologies used by Northern Trust for financial instruments measured at fair value on a recurring basis. Observable inputs reflect market data obtained from sources independent of the reporting entity; unobservable inputs reflect the entity's own assumptions about how market participants would value an asset or liability based on the best information available. GAAP requires an entity measuring fair value to maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs and establishes a fair value hierarchy of inputs. Financial instruments are categorized within the hierarchy based on the lowest level input that is significant to their valuation. Northern Trust's policy is to recognize transfers into and transfers out of fair value levels as of the end of the reporting period in which the transfer occurred. No transfers between fair value levels occurred during the six months ended June 30, 2018 or the year ended December 31, 2017.

Level 1 — Quoted, active market prices for identical assets or liabilities.

Northern Trust's Level 1 assets are comprised of available for sale investments in U.S. treasury securities.

Level 2 — Observable inputs other than Level 1 prices, such as quoted active market prices for similar assets or liabilities, quoted prices for identical or similar assets in inactive markets, and model-derived valuations in which all significant inputs are observable in active markets.

Northern Trust's Level 2 assets include available for sale and trading account debt securities, the fair values of which are determined predominantly by external pricing vendors. Prices received from vendors are compared to other vendor and third-party prices. If a security price obtained from a pricing vendor is determined to exceed pre-determined tolerance levels that are assigned based on an asset type's characteristics, the exception is researched and, if the price is not able to be validated, an alternate pricing vendor is utilized, consistent with Northern Trust's pricing source hierarchy. As of June 30, 2018, Northern Trust's available for sale debt securities portfolio included 1,466 Level 2 debt securities with an aggregate market value of \$29.5 billion. All 1,466 debt securities were valued by external pricing vendors. As of December 31, 2017, Northern Trust's available for sale debt securities portfolio included 1,436 Level 2 debt securities with an aggregate market value of \$28.0 billion. All 1,436 debt securities were valued by external pricing vendors. Trading account debt securities, which totaled \$0.7 million and \$0.5 million as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, were all valued using external pricing vendors.

Level 2 assets and liabilities also include derivative contracts which are valued internally using widely accepted income-based models that incorporate inputs readily observable in actively quoted markets and reflect the contractual terms of the contracts. Observable inputs include foreign exchange rates and interest rates for foreign exchange contracts; interest rates for interest rate swap contracts and forward contracts; and interest rates and volatility inputs for interest rate option contracts. Northern Trust evaluates the impact of counterparty credit risk and its own credit risk on the valuation of its derivative instruments. Factors considered include the likelihood of default by Northern Trust and its counterparties, the remaining maturities of the instruments, net exposures after giving effect to master netting arrangements or similar agreements, available collateral, and other credit enhancements in determining the appropriate fair value of derivative instruments. The resulting valuation adjustments have not been considered material.

Level 3 — Valuation techniques in which one or more significant inputs are unobservable in the marketplace.

Northern Trust's Level 3 assets consist of auction rate securities purchased in 2008 from Northern Trust clients. To estimate the fair value of auction rate securities, Northern Trust uses external pricing vendors that incorporate transaction details and market-based inputs such as past auction results, trades and bids. The significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value measurement are the prices of the securities supported by little market activity and for which trading is limited.

Northern Trust's Level 3 liabilities consist of swaps that Northern Trust entered into with the purchaser of 1.1 million and 1.0 million shares of Visa Inc. Class B common stock (Visa Class B common shares) previously held by Northern Trust and sold in June 2016 and 2015, respectively. Pursuant to the swaps, Northern Trust retains the risks associated with the ultimate conversion of the Visa Class B common shares into shares of Visa Inc. Class A common stock (Visa Class A common shares), such that the counterparty will be compensated for any dilutive adjustments to the conversion ratio and Northern Trust will be compensated for any anti-dilutive adjustments to the ratio. The swaps also

require periodic payments from Northern Trust to the counterparty calculated by reference to the market price of Visa Class A common shares and a fixed rate of interest. The fair value of the swaps is determined using a discounted cash flow methodology. The significant unobservable inputs used in the fair value measurement are Northern Trust's own assumptions about estimated changes in the conversion rate of the Visa Class B common shares into

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Visa Class A common shares, the date on which such conversion is expected to occur and the estimated growth rate of the Visa Class A common share price. See "Visa Class B Common Shares" under Note 20 – "Contingent Liabilities" for further information.

Northern Trust believes its valuation methods for its assets and liabilities carried at fair value are appropriate; however, the use of different methodologies or assumptions, particularly as applied to Level 3 assets and liabilities, could have a material effect on the computation of their estimated fair values.

The following table presents the fair values of Northern Trust's Level 3 assets and liabilities as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, as well as the valuation techniques, significant unobservable inputs, and quantitative information used to develop significant unobservable inputs for such assets and liabilities as of such dates.

Table 32: Level 3 Significant Unobservable Inputs

| | June 30, 2018 | | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------|------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| Financial Instrument | Fair Value | Valuation Technique | Unobservable Inputs | Range Inputs | |
| Auction Rate Securities | \$2.8 million | Comparables | Price | \$93 | 10 0 |
| | \$36.1 million | Discounted Cash | Visa Class A Appreciation | 7.0 % | 641.0% |
| Swaps Related to Sale of Certain | | Flow | Conversion Rate | 1.62 x | $\frac{1.64x}{1.64x}$ |
| Visa Class B Common Shares | | | Expected Duration | 1.25 | $\frac{3.75}{\text{years}}$ |
| | December 31. | , 2017 | | | |
| Financial Instrument | Fair Value | Valuation Technique | Unobservable Inputs | Rang Inpu | ge of ts |
| Auction Rate Securities | \$4.3 million | Comparables | Price | \$92 | 10 0 |
| | \$29.7 million | Discounted Cash | Visa Class A Appreciation | n 7.0 | %-11.0% |
| Swap Related to Sale of Certain | | Flow | Conversion Rate | 1.63 | x 1. 65x |
| Visa Class B Common Shares | | | Expected Duration | 1.5 | $\frac{4.0}{\text{years}}$ |

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following tables present assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, segregated by fair value hierarchy level.

Table 33: Recurring Basis Hierarchy Leveling

| Table 33. Reculting Dasis Therarchy Leveling | | | | | A |
|---|-------------|-----------|---------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| (In Millions) | Level 1 | Level 2 | Level 3 | Netting | Assets/Liabilities at Fair Value |
| June 30, 2018 | | | | | |
| Debt Securities | | | | | |
| Available for Sale | | | | | |
| U.S. Government | \$5,638.5 | \$ | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 5,638.5 |
| Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | | 737.8 | | _ | 737.8 |
| Government Sponsored Agency | | 21,054.5 | | | 21,054.5 |
| Non-U.S. Government | | 141.2 | | _ | 141.2 |
| Corporate Debt | | 2,466.2 | | _ | 2,466.2 |
| Covered Bonds | | 831.9 | | _ | 831.9 |
| Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds | s — | 2,009.0 | | _ | 2,009.0 |
| Other Asset-Backed | | 1,855.8 | | _ | 1,855.8 |
| Auction Rate | | | 2.8 | _ | 2.8 |
| Commercial Mortgage-Backed | | 427.7 | | _ | 427.7 |
| Other | | 19.1 | | _ | 19.1 |
| Total Available for Sale | 5,638.5 | 29,543.2 | 2.8 | | 35,184.5 |
| Trading Account | | 0.7 | | _ | 0.7 |
| Total Available for Sale and Trading Debt Securities | 5,638.5 | 29,543.9 | 2.8 | _ | 35,185.2 |
| Other Assets | | | | | |
| Derivative Assets | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | | 3,308.8 | | | 3,308.8 |
| Interest Rate Contracts | | 100.6 | | _ | 100.6 |
| Total Derivative Assets | | 3,409.4 | | (1,775.8) | 1,633.6 |
| Other Liabilities | | | | | |
| Derivative Liabilities | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | | 3,063.1 | | | 3,063.1 |
| Interest Rate Contracts | | 113.4 | | _ | 113.4 |
| Other Financial Derivatives (1) | | 0.6 | 36.1 | | 36.7 |
| Total Derivative Liabilities | \$ — | \$3,177.1 | \$ 36.1 | \$(2,463.3) | \$ 749.9 |
| Note: Northern Trust has elected to net derivative assets and liabilities when legally enforceable master netting | | | | | |

Note: Northern Trust has elected to net derivative assets and liabilities when legally enforceable master netting arrangements or similar agreements exist between Northern Trust and the counterparty. As of June 30, 2018, derivative assets and liabilities shown above also include reductions of \$298.1 million and \$985.6 million, respectively, as a result of cash collateral received from and deposited with derivative counterparties.

⁽¹⁾ This line consists of a total return swap and swaps related to the sale of certain Visa Class B common shares.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

| (In Millions) | Level 1 | Level 2 | Level 3 | Netting | Assets/Liabilities at Fair Value |
|---|---------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|----------------------------------|
| December 31, 2017 | | | | | |
| Debt Securities | | | | | |
| Available for Sale | | | | | |
| U.S. Government | \$5,700.3 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ 5,700.3 |
| Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | _ | 746.4 | | | 746.4 |
| Government Sponsored Agency | _ | 18,676.6 | | | 18,676.6 |
| Non-U.S. Government | | 177.2 | | | 177.2 |
| Corporate Debt | | 2,993.0 | | | 2,993.0 |
| Covered Bonds | | 875.6 | | | 875.6 |
| Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds | · — | 1,820.0 | | | 1,820.0 |
| Other Asset-Backed | | 2,291.3 | | | 2,291.3 |
| Auction Rate | | | 4.3 | | 4.3 |
| Commercial Mortgage-Backed | _ | 435.1 | | _ | 435.1 |
| Other | | 22.3 | | | 22.3 |
| Total Available for Sale | 5,700.3 | 28,037.5 | 4.3 | | 33,742.1 |
| Trading Account | | 0.5 | | | 0.5 |
| Total Available for Sale and Trading Debt Securities | 5,700.3 | 28,038.0 | 4.3 | | 33,742.6 |
| Other Assets | | | | | |
| Derivative Assets | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | | 2,557.1 | | _ | 2,557.1 |
| Interest Rate Contracts | | 97.0 | | _ | 97.0 |
| Total Derivative Assets | | 2,654.1 | | (1,860.0) | 794.1 |
| Other Liabilities | | | | | |
| Derivative Liabilities | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | | 2,715.1 | | _ | 2,715.1 |
| Interest Rate Contracts | | 83.5 | | | 83.5 |
| Other Financial Derivatives (1) | | 0.7 | 29.7 | | 30.4 |
| Total Derivative Liabilities | \$ | \$2,799.3 | \$ 29.7 | \$(1,621.4) | \$ 1,207.6 |
| Note: Northern Trust has elected to not derivative assets and | l liabilities | when lea | ally anfo | reaghla mag | ster netting |

Note: Northern Trust has elected to net derivative assets and liabilities when legally enforceable master netting arrangements or similar agreements exist between Northern Trust and the counterparty. As of December 31, 2017, derivative assets and liabilities shown above also include reductions of \$427.6 million and \$189.0 million, respectively, as a result of cash collateral received from and deposited with derivative counterparties.

⁽¹⁾ This line consists of swaps related to the sale of certain Visa Class B common shares and total return swaps.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following tables present the changes in Level 3 assets and liabilities for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Table 34: Changes in Level 3 Assets

| | Auctio | on |
|--|--------|-------|
| Level 3 Assets (In Millions) | Rate | |
| | Securi | ties |
| Three Months Ended June 30, | 2018 | 2017 |
| Fair Value at April 1 | \$2.9 | \$4.3 |
| Total Gains (Losses): | | |
| Included in Other Comprehensive Income (1) | | |
| Purchases, Issues, Sales, and Settlements | | |
| Sales | | |
| Settlements | (0.1) | (0.2) |
| Fair Value at June 30 | \$2.8 | \$4.1 |
| Six Months Ended June 30, | 2018 | 2017 |
| Fair Value at January 1 | \$4.3 | \$4.7 |
| Total Gains (Losses): | | |
| Included in Earnings | | |
| Included in Other Comprehensive Income (1) | | |
| Purchases, Issues, Sales, and Settlements | | |
| Sales | | |
| Settlements | (1.5) | (0.6) |
| Fair Value at June 30 | \$2.8 | \$4.1 |

⁽¹⁾ Unrealized gains (losses) are included in net unrealized gains (losses) on debt securities available for sale in the consolidated statements of comprehensive income.

Table 35: Changes in Level 3 Liabilities

| C | | | | |
|---|--------------------------|-------|---------|---|
| | Swaps Related to Sale of | | | |
| Level 3 Liabilities (In Millions) | Certain Visa Class B | | | |
| | Common Shares | | | |
| Three Months Ended June 30, | 2018 | | 2017 | |
| Fair Value at April 1 | \$ 31.3 | | \$ 26.4 | |
| Total (Gains) Losses: | | | | |
| Included in Earnings (1) | 7.5 | | 1.5 | |
| Purchases, Issues, Sales, and Settlements | | | | |
| Purchases | _ | | _ | |
| Settlements | (2.7 |) | (2.0 |) |
| Fair Value at June 30 | \$ 36.1 | | \$ 25.9 | |
| | | | | |
| Six Months Ended June 30, | 2018 2 | 2017 | | |
| Fair Value at January 1 | \$29.7 \$ | 325.2 | 2 | |
| Total (Gains) Losses: | | | | |
| Included in Earnings (1) | 11.7 4 | 1.4 | | |
| Purchases, Issues, Sales, and Settlements | | | | |
| Purchases | | _ | | |
| Settlements | (5.3) | 3.7 |) | |
| Fair Value at June 30 | \$36.1 \$ | 325.9 |) | |
| (1) (2) | | | | |

^{(1) (}Gains) losses are recorded in other operating income in the consolidated statements of income.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

During the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, there were no transfers into or out of Level 3 assets or liabilities.

Carrying values of assets and liabilities that are not measured at fair value on a recurring basis may be adjusted to fair value in periods subsequent to their initial recognition, for example, to record an impairment of an asset. GAAP requires entities to disclose separately these subsequent fair value measurements and to classify them under the fair value hierarchy.

Assets measured at fair value on a nonrecurring basis at June 30, 2018 and 2017, all of which were categorized as Level 3 under the fair value hierarchy, were comprised of impaired loans whose values were based on real estate and other available collateral, and of other real estate owned (OREO) properties. Fair values of real-estate loan collateral were estimated using a market approach typically supported by third-party valuations and property-specific fees and taxes, and were subject to adjustments to reflect management's judgment as to realizable value. Other loan collateral, which typically consists of accounts receivable, inventory and equipment, is valued using a market approach adjusted for asset-specific characteristics and in limited instances third-party valuations are used. OREO assets are carried at the lower of cost or fair value less estimated costs to sell, with fair value typically based on third-party appraisals. Collateral-based impaired loans and OREO assets that have been adjusted to fair value totaled \$13.8 million and \$0.2 million, respectively, at June 30, 2018, and \$19.8 million and \$1.0 million, respectively, at June 30, 2017. Assets measured at fair value on a nonrecurring basis reflect management's judgment as to realizable value. The following table presents the fair values of Northern Trust's Level 3 assets that were measured at fair value on a nonrecurring basis as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, as well as the valuation technique, significant

unobservable inputs and quantitative information used to develop the significant unobservable inputs for such assets as of such dates.

Table 36: Level 3 Nonrecurring Basis Significant Unobservable Inputs June 30, 2018

| Financial Instrument | Fair Value | Valuation | Unobservable Input | Range of Discounts |
|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|
| | | Technique | • | Applied |
| Loans | \$13.8 million | Market Approach | Discount to reflect realizable value | 15.0% - 25.0% |
| OREO | \$0.2 million | Market Approach | Discount to reflect realizable value | 15.0% - 20.0% |
| | December 31, | 2017 | | |
| Financial Instrument | Fair Value | Valuation Technique | Unobservable Input | Range of Discounts |
| Lagra | ¢12.2:11: | Maulant Ammussalı | Discount to reflect realizable value | Applied |
| Loans | | * * | | 15.0% - 25.0% |
| OREO | \$0.3 million | Market Approach | Discount to reflect realizable value | 15.0% - 20.0% |
| 43 | | | | |

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following tables summarize the fair values of all financial instruments.

| Table 37: Fair | Value of Financial Instruments |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| (T 3 ('11') | |

| (In Millions) | June 30, 2 | 018 | | | | |
|--|------------------|--------------|---------------|---------|----------|-----|
| (III MIIIIOIIS) | | Total | Fair Value | بد | | |
| | Book | Fair | | Level | | |
| | Value | Value | Level 1 | 2 | Level | 3 |
| Assets | | | | | | |
| Cash and Due from Banks | \$4,888.1 | \$4,888.1 | \$4,888.1 | \$ | \$ | |
| Federal Reserve and Other Central Bank Deposits | 33,422.0 | 33,422.0 | | 33,422 | .0— | |
| Interest-Bearing Deposits with Banks | 4,161.2 | 4,161.2 | _ | 4,161.2 | 2 — | |
| Federal Funds Sold and Resell Agreements | 1,427.8 | 1,427.8 | _ | 1,427.8 | 3 — | |
| Debt Securities | , | , | | , | | |
| Available for Sale (Note) | 35,184.5 | 35,184.5 | 5,638.5 | 29,543 | .22.8 | |
| Held to Maturity | 14,225.1 | 14,157.8 | 115.7 | 14,042 | | |
| Trading Account | 0.7 | 0.7 | | 0.7 | | |
| Loans (excluding Leases) | | | | | | |
| Held for Investment | 32,189.8 | 32,156.5 | _ | | 32,150 | 6.5 |
| Held for Sale | _ | _ | | _ | _ | ••• |
| Client Security Settlement Receivables | 2,027.3 | 2,027.3 | | 2,027.3 | 3 — | |
| Other Assets | 2,02710 | _,0 | | _,0_/ | | |
| Federal Reserve and Federal Home Loan Bank Stock | 280.8 | 280.8 | | 280.8 | | |
| Community Development Investments | 472.0 | 472.0 | _ | 472.0 | | |
| Employee Benefit and Deferred Compensation | 207.2 | 203.2 | 131.9 | 71.3 | | |
| Liabilities | 207.2 | 203.2 | 131.7 | 71.5 | | |
| Deposits | | | | | | |
| Demand, Noninterest-Bearing, Savings, Money Market and Other | | | | | | |
| Interest-Bearing | \$42,158.3 | \$42,158.3 | \$42,158.3 | \$— | \$ | |
| Savings Certificates and Other Time | 855.2 | 859.8 | | 859.8 | | |
| Non U.S. Offices Interest-Bearing | 63,511.4 | | | 63,511 | | |
| Federal Funds Purchased | 3,222.0 | 3,222.0 | _ | 3,222.0 | | |
| Securities Sold under Agreements to Repurchase | 981.3 | 981.3 | | 981.3 | | |
| Other Borrowings | 7,635.1 | 7,639.7 | | 7,639.7 | | |
| Senior Notes | 1,497.7 | 1,492.2 | | 1,492.2 | | |
| Long Term Debt (excluding Leases) | 1,177.7 | 1,172.2 | | 1,172.2 | _ | |
| Subordinated Debt | 1,399.8 | 1,394.6 | | 1,394.6 | 5 — | |
| Floating Rate Capital Debt | 277.5 | 260.1 | | 260.1 | | |
| Other Liabilities | 217.5 | 200.1 | | 200.1 | | |
| Standby Letters of Credit | 26.7 | 26.7 | _ | | 26.7 | |
| Loan Commitments | 32.8 | 32.8 | _ | | 32.8 | |
| Derivative Instruments | 32.0 | 32.0 | | | 32.0 | |
| Asset/Liability Management | | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | | | | | | |
| Assets | \$251.9 | \$251.9 | \$ | \$251.9 | 2 | |
| Liabilities | 9.3 | 9.3 | ψ— | 9.3 | Ψ | |
| Interest Rate Contracts | 7.5 |).5 | _ | 7.3 | <u> </u> | |
| Assets | 33.5 | 33.5 | | 33.5 | | |
| Liabilities | 22.9 | 33.3 22.9 | _ | 22.9 | | |
| Other Financial Derivatives | LL. 9 | <i>LL</i> .9 | | 22.9 | | |
| Onici Finaliciai Derivatives | | | | | | |

| Liabilities (1) | 36.7 | 36.7 | | 0.6 | 36.1 |
|----------------------------|---------|---------|---|---------|------|
| Client-Related and Trading | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | | | | | |
| Assets | 3,056.9 | 3,056.9 | | 3,056.9 | 9 — |
| Liabilities | 3,053.8 | 3,053.8 | | 3,053. | 3 — |
| Interest Rate Contracts | | | | | |
| Assets | 67.1 | 67.1 | _ | 67.1 | _ |
| Liabilities | 90.5 | 90.5 | | 90.5 | _ |

Note: Refer to the table located on page 40 for the disaggregation of available for sale debt securities.

⁽¹⁾ This line consists of a total return swap and swaps related to the sale of certain Visa Class B common shares.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

| (In Millions) | December Book Value | 31, 2017 Total Fair Value | Fair Value | Level 2 | Leve | 13 |
|--|---|---|---------------------|---|---------------|------|
| Assets Cash and Due from Banks Federal Reserve and Other Central Bank Deposits Interest-Bearing Deposits with Banks Federal Funds Sold and Resell Agreements Debt Securities | \$4,518.1 40,479.1 5,611.9 1,324.3 | \$4,518.1 40,479.1 5,611.9 1,324.3 | \$4,518.1 — — | \$ — 40,479.1 5,611.9 1,324.3 | <u> </u> | _ |
| Available for Sale (Note) Held to Maturity Trading Account Loans (excluding Leases) | 33,742.1 13,049.0 0.5 | 33,742.1 13,010.9 0.5 | 5,700.3 35.0 | 28,037.5 12,975.9 0.5 |) <u> </u> | |
| Held for Investment Held for Sale Client Security Settlement Receivables Other Accets | 32,211.1 20.9 1,647.0 | 32,375.8 20.9 1,647.0 | _ _ _ | 1,647.0 | 32,37 20.9 | 75.8 |
| Other Assets Federal Reserve and Federal Home Loan Bank Stock Community Development Investments Employee Benefit and Deferred Compensation Liabilities | 223.1 415.3 183.4 | 223.1 415.3 181.5 | 115.5 | 223.1 415.3 66.0 | _ _ _ | |
| Deposits Demand, Noninterest-Bearing, Savings, Money Market and Other Interest-Bearing | \$45,566.3 | \$45,566.3 | \$45,566.3 | \$ — | \$ | |
| Savings Certificates and Other Time Non U.S. Offices Interest-Bearing Federal Funds Purchased Securities Sold under Agreements to Repurchase Other Borrowings Senior Notes | 1,152.3 65,672.2 2,286.1 834.0 6,051.1 1,497.3 | 1,153.6 65,672.2 2,286.1 834.0 6,052.9 1,528.4 | | 1,153.6 65,672.2 2,286.1 834.0 6,052.9 1,528.4 | 2 — — — | |
| Long Term Debt (excluding Leases) Subordinated Debt Floating Rate Capital Debt Other Liabilities | 1,435.1 277.5 | 1,449.8 260.0 | | 1,449.8 260.0 | | |
| Standby Letters of Credit Loan Commitments Derivative Instruments Asset/Liability Management | 30.3 33.1 | 30.3 33.1 | | _ | 30.3 33.1 | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts Assets Liabilities Interest Rate Contracts | \$30.1 192.6 | \$30.1 192.6 | \$— — | \$ 30.1 192.6 | \$ — | _ |
| Assets Liabilities Other Financial Derivatives | 31.9 19.4 | 31.9 19.4 | _ | 31.9 19.4 | _ | |
| Liabilities ⁽¹⁾ Client-Related and Trading | 30.4 | 30.4 | _ | 0.7 | 29.7 | |

| Foreign | Exchange | Contracts |
|-----------|----------|-----------|
| 1 Olcigii | Lachange | Commacis |

| e e | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------|---------|---|---------|-----|
| Assets | 2,527.0 | 2,527.0 | | 2,527.0 |) — |
| Liabilities | 2,522.5 | 2,522.5 | _ | 2,522.5 | · — |
| Interest Rate Contracts | | | | | |
| Assets | 65.1 | 65.1 | | 65.1 | |
| Liabilities | 64.1 | 64.1 | | 64.1 | |

Note: Refer to the table located on page 41 for the disaggregation of available for sale debt securities.

⁽¹⁾ This line consists of swaps related to the sale of certain Visa Class B common shares and total return swaps.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 4 – Securities

46

The following tables provide the amortized cost and fair values of debt securities at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Table 38: Reconciliation of Amortized Cost to Fair Value of Debt Securities Available for Sale

| Debt Securities Available for Sale | June 30, 20 | | ., 4114616 | 101 5410 |
|---|--|---|---|--|
| (In Millions) | Amortized Cost | Unrea | lized Losses | Fair Value |
| U.S. Government | \$5,668.7 | \$26.0 | \$56.2 | \$5,638.5 |
| Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | 741.3 | 0.1 | 3.6 | 737.8 |
| Government Sponsored Agency | 21,186.9 | 35.4 | 167.8 | 21,054.5 |
| Non-U.S. Government | 143.2 | _ | 2.0 | 141.2 |
| Corporate Debt | 2,493.1 | 2.6 | 29.5 | 2,466.2 |
| Covered Bonds | 838.0 | 0.9 | 7.0 | 831.9 |
| Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds | 2,008.7 | 6.2 | 5.9 | 2,009.0 |
| Other Asset-Backed | 1,871.7 | 0.7 | 16.6 | 1,855.8 |
| Auction Rate | 2.9 | | 0.1 | 2.8 |
| Commercial Mortgage-Backed | 433.9 | | 6.2 | 427.7 |
| Other | 19.1 | | | 19.1 |
| Total | \$35,407.5 | \$71.9 | \$294.9 | \$35,184.5 |
| Debt Securities Available for Sale | Daganahan | 21 20 | 17 | |
| Debt Securities Available for Sale | December | 31, 20 | 1 / | |
| | Amortized Cost | Gross Unrea | lized | Fair Value |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government | Amortized | Gross Unrea Gains | | |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government | Amortized Cost | Gross Unrea Gains | lized Losses | Value |
| (In Millions) | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 | lized Losses \$32.1 | Value \$5,700.3 |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 749.9 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 | lized Losses \$32.1 3.5 | Value \$5,700.3 746.4 |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 749.9 18,745.3 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 — 39.9 | lized Losses \$32.1 3.5 108.6 | Value \$5,700.3 746.4 18,676.6 |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 749.9 18,745.3 179.1 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 — 39.9 | lized Losses \$32.1 3.5 108.6 1.9 | Value \$5,700.3 746.4 18,676.6 177.2 |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 749.9 18,745.3 179.1 3,013.7 879.0 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 — 39.9 — 2.2 | lized Losses \$32.1 3.5 108.6 1.9 22.9 | Value \$5,700.3 746.4 18,676.6 177.2 2,993.0 |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 749.9 18,745.3 179.1 3,013.7 879.0 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 — 39.9 — 2.2 1.0 | lized Losses \$32.1 3.5 108.6 1.9 22.9 4.4 | Value \$5,700.3 746.4 18,676.6 177.2 2,993.0 875.6 |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 749.9 18,745.3 179.1 3,013.7 879.0 1,819.8 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 — 39.9 — 2.2 1.0 4.0 | lized Losses \$32.1 3.5 108.6 1.9 22.9 4.4 3.8 | Value \$5,700.3 746.4 18,676.6 177.2 2,993.0 875.6 1,820.0 |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds Other Asset-Backed | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 749.9 18,745.3 179.1 3,013.7 879.0 1,819.8 2,297.7 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 — 39.9 — 2.2 1.0 4.0 1.5 | lized Losses \$32.1 3.5 108.6 1.9 22.9 4.4 3.8 7.9 | Value \$5,700.3 746.4 18,676.6 177.2 2,993.0 875.6 1,820.0 2,291.3 |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds Other Asset-Backed Auction Rate | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 749.9 18,745.3 179.1 3,013.7 879.0 1,819.8 2,297.7 4.4 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 — 39.9 — 2.2 1.0 4.0 1.5 — | lized Losses \$32.1 3.5 108.6 1.9 22.9 4.4 3.8 7.9 0.1 | Value \$5,700.3 746.4 18,676.6 177.2 2,993.0 875.6 1,820.0 2,291.3 4.3 |
| (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds Other Asset-Backed Auction Rate Commercial Mortgage-Backed | Amortized Cost \$5,714.4 749.9 18,745.3 179.1 3,013.7 879.0 1,819.8 2,297.7 4.4 439.2 22.3 | Gross Unrea Gains \$18.0 — 39.9 — 2.2 1.0 4.0 1.5 — — | lized Losses \$32.1 3.5 108.6 1.9 22.9 4.4 3.8 7.9 0.1 4.1 | Value \$5,700.3 746.4 18,676.6 177.2 2,993.0 875.6 1,820.0 2,291.3 4.3 435.1 |

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Table 39: Reconciliation of Amortized Cost to Fair Value of Debt Securities Held to Maturity

| Table 59: Reconciliation of Amortized Cost to Fair Value of | | | icia to iv | latarity |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity | June 30, 20 | | | |
| | Amortized | Gross | ligad | Fair |
| (In Millians) | Cost | Unrea | | Value |
| (In Millions) | 01157 | | Losses | 01157 |
| U.S Government | \$115.7 | \$— | \$ <i>—</i> | \$115.7 |
| Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | 32.6 | 1.1 | _ | 33.7 |
| Government Sponsored Agency | 5.1 | 0.3 | _ | 5.4 |
| Corporate Debt | 413.3 | 0.7 | 0.6 | 413.4 |
| Covered Bonds | 3,228.7 | 12.5 | 9.6 | 3,231.6 |
| Non-U.S. Government | 5,781.5 | 1.5 | 10.3 | 5,772.7 |
| Certificates of Deposit | 52.0 | | _ | 52.0 |
| Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds | 3,267.7 | 4.9 | 14.1 | 3,258.5 |
| Other Asset-Backed | 1,137.3 | 0.3 | 0.2 | 1,137.4 |
| Other | 191.2 | | 53.8 | 137.4 |
| Total | \$14,225.1 | \$21.3 | \$88.6 | \$14,157.8 |
| | Ψ I .,==υ·I | Ψ-1.0 | 4 00.0 | Ψ 1 .,10 / .0 |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity | December | | | Ψ1.,107.0 |
| | December | 31, 20 Gross | | · |
| | December Amortized | 31, 20 Gross | 17 | Fair |
| | December | 31, 20 Gross Unrea | 17 | · |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity | December Amortized | 31, 20 Gross Unrea | 17 lized Losses | Fair |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity (In Millions) U.S Government | December Amortized Cost | 31, 20 Gross Unrea Gains | 17 lized Losses | Fair Value |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity (In Millions) | December Amortized Cost \$35.0 | 31, 20 Gross Unrea Gains \$— | 17 lized Losses \$— | Fair Value \$35.0 |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity (In Millions) U.S Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | December Amortized Cost \$35.0 34.6 | 31, 20 Gross Unrea Gains \$— 1.4 | lized Losses \$— 0.1 | Fair Value \$35.0 35.9 |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity (In Millions) U.S Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency | Amortized Cost \$35.0 34.6 5.8 | 31, 20 Gross Unrea Gains \$— 1.4 0.4 | lized Losses \$— 0.1 — | Fair Value \$35.0 35.9 6.2 |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity (In Millions) U.S Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Corporate Debt | December Amortized Cost \$35.0 34.6 5.8 431.5 | 31, 20 Gross Unrea Gains \$— 1.4 0.4 1.0 | 17 lized Losses \$— 0.1 — 0.4 | Fair Value \$35.0 35.9 6.2 432.1 |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity (In Millions) U.S Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Non-U.S. Government | December Amortized Cost \$35.0 34.6 5.8 431.5 2,821.5 | 31, 20 Gross Unrea Gains \$— 1.4 0.4 1.0 11.9 | lized Losses \$— 0.1 — 0.4 3.7 | Fair Value \$35.0 35.9 6.2 432.1 2,829.7 |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity (In Millions) U.S Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Corporate Debt Covered Bonds | December Amortized Cost \$35.0 34.6 5.8 431.5 2,821.5 5,536.2 43.8 | 31, 20 Gross Unrea Gains \$— 1.4 0.4 1.0 11.9 | lized Losses \$— 0.1 — 0.4 3.7 6.0 | Fair Value \$35.0 35.9 6.2 432.1 2,829.7 5,531.5 |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity (In Millions) U.S Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Non-U.S. Government Certificates of Deposit | December Amortized Cost \$35.0 34.6 5.8 431.5 2,821.5 5,536.2 43.8 | 31, 20 Gross Unrea Gains \$— 1.4 0.4 1.0 11.9 | lized Losses \$— 0.1 — 0.4 3.7 6.0 0.1 | Fair Value \$35.0 35.9 6.2 432.1 2,829.7 5,531.5 43.7 |
| Debt Securities Held to Maturity (In Millions) U.S Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Non-U.S. Government Certificates of Deposit Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds | December Amortized Cost \$35.0 34.6 5.8 431.5 2,821.5 5,536.2 43.8 2,788.9 | 31, 20 Gross Unrea Gains \$— 1.4 0.4 1.0 11.9 1.3 — 5.4 | lized Losses \$— 0.1 — 0.4 3.7 6.0 0.1 4.1 | Fair Value \$35.0 35.9 6.2 432.1 2,829.7 5,531.5 43.7 2,790.2 |

Debt securities held to maturity consist of securities that management intends to, and Northern Trust has the ability to, hold until maturity.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following table provides the remaining maturity of debt securities as of June 30, 2018. Table 40: Remaining Maturity of Debt Securities Available for Sale and Held to Maturity

| June 30, 2018 | | | |
|---------------|---|--|--|
| Amortized | Fair | | |
| Cost | Value | | |
| | | | |
| \$7,994.0 | \$7,946.6 | | |
| 20,901.5 | 20,758.0 | | |
| 5,534.4 | 5,512.9 | | |
| 977.6 | 967.0 | | |
| 35,407.5 | 35,184.5 | | |
| | | | |
| 6,545.1 | 6,547.4 | | |
| 7,225.5 | 7,200.2 | | |
| 378.3 | 370.4 | | |
| 76.2 | 39.8 | | |
| \$14,225.1 | \$14,157.8 | | |
| | Amortized Cost \$7,994.0 20,901.5 5,534.4 977.6 35,407.5 6,545.1 7,225.5 378.3 76.2 | | |

Note: Mortgage-backed and asset-backed securities are included in the above table taking into account anticipated future prepayments.

Investment Security Gains / Losses. There were no net investment security gains or losses recognized in the three months ended June 30, 2018. Net investment security losses of \$0.4 million were recognized in the three months ended June 30, 2017. Gross proceeds from the sale of securities during the three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017 were \$176.6 million and \$978.5 million, respectively.

Net investment security losses of \$0.2 million were recognized in the six months ended June 30, 2018, all of which related to the OTTI of certain Community Reinvestment Act (CRA) eligible held to maturity securities. Net investment security losses of \$0.7 million were recognized in the six months ended June 30, 2017, which include \$0.1 million of charges related to the OTTI of certain CRA-eligible held to maturity securities. For the six months ended June 30, 2018, gross proceeds of \$178.6 million were received from the sale of securities, resulting in gross realized gains and losses of \$1.5 million each. For the six months ended June 30, 2017, proceeds of \$1.5 billion were received from the sale of securities, resulting in gross realized gains and losses of \$0.1 million and \$0.8 million, respectively.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Debt Securities with Unrealized Losses. The following tables provide information regarding debt securities that had been in a continuous unrealized loss position for less than twelve months and for twelve months or longer as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

| Table 41: Debt Securities with Unrealized Losses | | | | | | |
|--|---|--|---|--|--|--|
| Debt Securities with Unrealized Losses as of | Less than 1 | 2 Months | 12 Month | s or | Total | |
| June 30, 2018 | Less man | 12 Monuis | Longer | | Total | |
| (In Millions) | Fair | Unrealized | Fair | Unrealized | lFair | Unrealized |
| (III MIIIIOIIS) | | Losses | Value | Losses | Value | Losses |
| U.S. Government | \$3,374.3 | \$ 55.5 | \$199.2 | \$ 0.7 | \$3,573.5 | \$ 56.2 |
| Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | 678.0 | 3.5 | 7.6 | 0.1 | 685.6 | 3.6 |
| Government Sponsored Agency | 11,209.7 | 125.5 | 2,890.3 | 42.3 | 14,100.0 | 167.8 |
| Non-U.S. Government | 5,285.9 | 12.3 | | _ | 5,285.9 | 12.3 |
| Corporate Debt | 1,443.7 | 14.6 | 458.4 | 15.5 | 1,902.1 | 30.1 |
| Covered Bonds | 1,311.0 | 13.0 | 171.4 | 3.6 | 1,482.4 | 16.6 |
| Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. | 2,478.2 | 19.0 | 175.2 | 1.0 | 2,653.4 | 20.0 |
| Agency Bonds | 2,470.2 | 19.0 | 173.2 | 1.0 | 2,033.4 | 20.0 |
| Other Asset-Backed | 1,794.6 | 16.8 | _ | _ | 1,794.6 | 16.8 |
| Auction Rate | 1.1 | 0.1 | | _ | 1.1 | 0.1 |
| Commercial Mortgage-Backed | 228.3 | 4.2 | 181.8 | 2.0 | 410.1 | 6.2 |
| Other | 93.9 | 32.3 | 45.6 | 21.5 | 139.5 | 53.8 |
| Total | \$27,898.7 | \$ 296.8 | \$4,129.5 | \$ 86.7 | \$32,028.2 | \$ 383.5 |
| Debt Securities with Unrealized Losses as of | T .1 : | 10.34 4 | 12 Month | is or | Total | |
| | | | | | | |
| December 31, 2017 | Less than | 12 Months | Longer | | Total | |
| December 31, 2017 | Fair | 12 Months Unrealized | • | Unrealized | | Unrealized |
| | | | • | Unrealized Losses | | Unrealized Losses |
| December 31, 2017 | Fair | Unrealized | lFair | | dFair | |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) | Fair Value | Unrealized Losses | lFair Value | Losses | dFair Value | Losses |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government | Fair Value \$3,595.0 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 | lFair Value \$— | Losses \$ — | dFair Value \$3,595.0 | Losses \$ 32.1 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 | Fair Value \$— 52.0 | Losses \$ — 0.3 | dFair Value \$3,595.0 739.8 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 | Fair Value \$— 52.0 | Losses \$ — 0.3 | dFair Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 5,181.8 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 7.9 | Value \$— 52.0 2,998.9 | Losses \$ — 0.3 27.3 — | dFair Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 5,181.8 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 7.9 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 5,181.8 1,547.3 967.5 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 7.9 9.3 7.2 | Value \$— 52.0 2,998.9 — 922.3 89.1 | Losses \$ — 0.3 27.3 — 14.0 0.9 | dFair Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 5,181.8 2,469.6 1,056.6 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 7.9 23.3 8.1 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 5,181.8 1,547.3 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 7.9 9.3 | Fair Value \$— 52.0 2,998.9 — 922.3 | Losses \$ — 0.3 27.3 — 14.0 | dFair Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 5,181.8 2,469.6 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 7.9 23.3 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 5,181.8 1,547.3 967.5 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 7.9 9.3 7.2 | Value \$— 52.0 2,998.9 — 922.3 89.1 | Losses \$ — 0.3 27.3 — 14.0 0.9 | dFair Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 5,181.8 2,469.6 1,056.6 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 7.9 23.3 8.1 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 5,181.8 1,547.3 967.5 1,692.4 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 7.9 9.3 7.2 | Value \$— 52.0 2,998.9 — 922.3 89.1 235.8 | Losses \$ — 0.3 27.3 — 14.0 0.9 0.4 | Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 5,181.8 2,469.6 1,056.6 1,928.2 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 7.9 23.3 8.1 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds Other Asset-Backed | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 5,181.8 1,547.3 967.5 1,692.4 2,453.7 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 7.9 9.3 7.2 7.5 | Fair Value \$— 52.0 2,998.9 — 922.3 89.1 235.8 29.9 | Losses \$ — 0.3 27.3 — 14.0 0.9 0.4 0.1 | Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 5,181.8 2,469.6 1,056.6 1,928.2 2,483.6 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 7.9 23.3 8.1 7.9 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds Other Asset-Backed Certificates of Deposit | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 5,181.8 1,547.3 967.5 1,692.4 2,453.7 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 7.9 9.3 7.2 7.5 | Fair Value \$— 52.0 2,998.9 — 922.3 89.1 235.8 29.9 | Losses \$ — 0.3 27.3 — 14.0 0.9 0.4 0.1 — | dFair Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 5,181.8 2,469.6 1,056.6 1,928.2 2,483.6 43.7 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 7.9 23.3 8.1 7.9 8.4 0.1 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds Other Asset-Backed Certificates of Deposit Auction Rate | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 5,181.8 1,547.3 967.5 1,692.4 2,453.7 43.7 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 7.9 9.3 7.2 7.5 8.3 0.1 — | Fair Value \$— 52.0 2,998.9 — 922.3 89.1 235.8 29.9 — 3.1 | Losses \$ — 0.3 27.3 — 14.0 0.9 0.4 0.1 — 0.1 | dFair Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 5,181.8 2,469.6 1,056.6 1,928.2 2,483.6 43.7 3.1 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 7.9 23.3 8.1 7.9 8.4 0.1 0.1 |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) U.S. Government Obligations of States and Political Subdivisions Government Sponsored Agency Non-U.S. Government Corporate Debt Covered Bonds Sub-Sovereign, Supranational and Non-U.S. Agency Bonds Other Asset-Backed Certificates of Deposit Auction Rate Commercial Mortgage-Backed | Fair Value \$3,595.0 687.8 6,495.6 5,181.8 1,547.3 967.5 1,692.4 2,453.7 43.7 — 233.5 | Unrealized Losses \$ 32.1 3.3 81.3 7.9 9.3 7.2 7.5 8.3 0.1 — 2.6 27.3 | Fair Value \$— 52.0 2,998.9 — 922.3 89.1 235.8 29.9 — 3.1 201.6 | Losses \$ — 0.3 27.3 — 14.0 0.9 0.4 0.1 — 0.1 1.5 17.9 | dFair Value \$3,595.0 739.8 9,494.5 5,181.8 2,469.6 1,056.6 1,928.2 2,483.6 43.7 3.1 435.1 | Losses \$ 32.1 3.6 108.6 7.9 23.3 8.1 7.9 8.4 0.1 0.1 4.1 45.2 |

As of June 30, 2018, 1,340 debt securities with a combined fair value of \$32.0 billion were in an unrealized loss position, with their unrealized losses totaling \$383.5 million. Unrealized losses of \$167.8 million and \$56.2 million related to government sponsored agency and U.S. Government securities, respectively, are primarily attributable to changes in market interest rates since their purchase. Unrealized losses of \$30.1 million within corporate debt securities primarily reflect higher market rates since purchase; 38% of the corporate debt portfolio is backed by guarantees provided by U.S. and non-U.S. governmental entities.

The majority of the \$53.8 million of unrealized losses in debt securities classified as "other" at June 30, 2018 related to debt securities primarily purchased at a premium or par by Northern Trust to fulfill its obligations under the CRA. Unrealized losses on these CRA-related securities were attributable to yields that were below market rates for the

purpose of supporting institutions and programs that benefit low- to moderate- income communities within Northern Trust's market area. Unrealized losses of \$0.1 million related to auction rate securities primarily reflected reduced market liquidity as a majority of auctions continued to fail,

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

preventing holders from liquidating their investments at par. The remaining unrealized losses on Northern Trust's securities portfolio as of June 30, 2018 were attributable to changes in overall market interest rates, increased credit spreads or reduced market liquidity. As of June 30, 2018, Northern Trust did not intend to sell any investment in an unrealized loss position and it was more likely than not that Northern Trust would not be required to sell any such investment before the recovery of its amortized cost basis, which may be maturity.

Security impairment reviews are conducted quarterly to identify and evaluate securities that have indications of possible OTTI. A determination as to whether a security's decline in market value is other-than-temporary takes into consideration numerous factors and the relative significance of any single factor can vary by security. Factors Northern Trust considers in determining whether impairment is other-than-temporary include, but are not limited to: the length of time the security has been impaired; the severity of the impairment; the cause of the impairment and the financial condition and near-term prospects of the issuer; activity in the market of the issuer, which may indicate adverse credit conditions; Northern Trust's intent regarding the sale of the security as of the balance sheet date; and the likelihood that it will not be required to sell the security for a period of time sufficient to allow for the recovery of the security's amortized cost basis. For each security meeting the requirements of Northern Trust's internal screening process, an extensive review is conducted to determine if OTTI has occurred.

While all securities are considered, the process for identifying credit impairment within CRA-eligible mortgage-backed securities incorporates an expected loss approach using discounted cash flows on the underlying collateral pools. To evaluate whether an unrealized loss on CRA-eligible mortgage-backed securities is other-than-temporary, a calculation of the security's present value is made using current pool data, the current delinquency pipeline, default rates and loan loss severities based on the historical performance of the mortgage pools, and Northern Trust's outlook for the housing market and the overall economy. If the present value of the collateral pools was found to be less than the current amortized cost of the security, a credit-related OTTI loss would be recorded in earnings equal to the difference between the two amounts.

Impairments of CRA-eligible mortgage-backed securities are influenced by a number of factors, including but not limited to, U.S. economic and housing market performance, pool credit enhancement level, year of origination and estimated credit quality of the collateral. The factors used in estimating losses related to CRA-eligible mortgage-backed securities vary by vintage of loan origination and collateral quality.

There were no OTTI losses recognized during the three months ended June 30, 2018 or June 30, 2017 related to CRA-eligible mortgage-backed securities. There were \$0.2 million and \$0.1 million of OTTI losses recognized in the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, related to CRA-eligible mortgage-backed securities. Credit Losses on Debt Securities. The table below provides the cumulative credit-related losses recognized in earnings on debt securities other-than-temporarily impaired.

Table 42: Cumulative Credit-Related Losses on Debt Securities

| | Three | e | Six | |
|---|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| | Mon | ths | Mont | hs |
| | Ende | d | Ende | d |
| | June | 30, | June | 30, |
| (In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| Cumulative Credit-Related Losses on Debt Securities Held — Beginning of Period | \$3.8 | \$3.5 | \$3.6 | \$3.4 |
| Plus: Losses on Newly Identified Impairments | — | _ | 0.2 | _ |
| Additional Losses on Previously Identified Impairments | — | — | — | 0.1 |
| Less: Current and Prior Period Losses on Debt Securities Sold During the Period | — | _ | | _ |
| Cumulative Credit-Related Losses on Debt Securities Held — End of Period | \$3.8 | \$3.5 | \$3.8 | \$3.5 |
| Note 5 – Securities Sold Under Agreements to Repurchase | | | | |

Securities sold under agreements to repurchase are accounted for as collateralized financings and recorded at the amounts at which the securities were sold plus accrued interest. To minimize any potential credit risk associated with these transactions, the fair value of the securities sold is monitored, limits are set on exposure with counterparties, and the financial condition of counterparties is regularly assessed. Securities sold under agreements to repurchase are held

by the counterparty until the repurchase.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following table provides information regarding repurchase agreements that are accounted for as secured borrowings as of June 30, 2018.

Table 43: Repurchase Agreements Accounted for as Secured Borrowings

June 30, 2018
Remaining Contractual

(In Millions)

Repurchase Agreements

Overnight and
Continuous

U.S. Treasury and Agency Securities

Total Borrowings

Gross Amount of Recognized Liabilities for Repurchase Agreements in Note 22

Amounts related to agreements not included in Note 22

Note 6 – Loans and Leases

Amounts outstanding for loans and leases, by segment and class, are shown below.

Table 44: Loans and Leases

| (In Millions) | June 30, | December 3 | |
|--|------------|-------------|---|
| (III WIIIIOIIS) | 2018 | 2017 | |
| Commercial | | | |
| Commercial and Institutional | \$8,779.2 | \$ 9,042.2 | |
| Commercial Real Estate | 3,389.0 | 3,482.7 | |
| Non-U.S. | 2,085.4 | 1,538.5 | |
| Lease Financing, net | 156.4 | 229.2 | |
| Other | 475.7 | 265.4 | |
| Total Commercial | 14,885.7 | 14,558.0 | |
| Personal | | | |
| Private Client | 10,651.0 | 10,753.1 | |
| Residential Real Estate | 6,890.5 | 7,247.6 | |
| Other | 46.0 | 33.5 | |
| Total Personal | 17,587.5 | 18,034.2 | |
| Total Loans and Leases | \$32,473.2 | \$ 32,592.2 | |
| Allowance for Credit Losses Assigned to Loans and Leases | (127.2) | (131.2 |) |
| Net Loans and Leases | \$32,346.0 | \$ 32,461.0 | |
| Allowance for Credit Losses Assigned to Loans and Leases | (127.2) | (131.2 |) |

Residential real estate loans consist of traditional first lien mortgages and equity credit lines that generally require a loan-to-collateral value of no more than 65% to 80% at inception. Northern Trust's equity credit line products generally have draw periods of up to 10 years and a balloon payment of any outstanding balance is due at maturity. Payments are interest only with variable interest rates. Northern Trust does not offer equity credit lines that include an option to convert the outstanding balance to an amortizing payment loan. As of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, equity credit lines totaled \$764.2 million and \$908.6 million, respectively, and equity credit lines for which first liens were held by Northern Trust represented 94% and 93% of the total equity credit lines as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

Included within the non-U.S., commercial-other and personal-other classes are short-duration advances primarily related to the processing of custodied client investments that totaled \$1.4 billion at June 30, 2018, and \$906.4 million at December 31, 2017. Demand deposit overdrafts reclassified as loan balances totaled \$73.4 million and \$127.6 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. There were no loans classified as held for sale as of June 30, 2018, compared to \$20.9 million as of December 31, 2017. Leases classified as held for sale totaled \$25.4 million as of June 30, 2018 and \$33.1 million as of December 31, 2017, respectively, related to the decision to exit a non-strategic loan and lease portfolio.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Credit Quality Indicators. Credit quality indicators are statistics, measurements or other metrics that provide information regarding the relative credit risk of loans and leases. Northern Trust utilizes a variety of credit quality indicators to assess the credit risk of loans and leases at the segment, class and individual credit exposure levels. As part of its credit process, Northern Trust utilizes an internal borrower risk rating system to support identification, approval and monitoring of credit risk. Borrower risk ratings are used in credit underwriting, management reporting and the calculation of credit loss allowances and economic capital.

Risk ratings are used for ranking the credit risk of borrowers and the probability of their default. Each borrower is rated using one of a number of ratings models or other subjective assessment methodologies, which consider both quantitative and qualitative factors. The ratings models vary among classes of loans and leases in order to capture the unique risk characteristics inherent within each particular type of credit exposure. Provided below are the more significant performance indicator attributes considered within Northern Trust's borrower rating models, by loan and lease class.

Commercial and Institutional: leverage, profit margin, liquidity, asset size and capital levels;

Commercial Real Estate: debt service coverage, loan-to-value ratio, leasing status and guarantor support;

Lease Financing and Commercial-Other: leverage, profit margin, liquidity, asset size and capital levels;

Non-U.S.: leverage, profit margin, liquidity, return on assets and capital levels;

Residential Real Estate: payment history, credit bureau scores and loan-to-value ratio;

Private Client: cash-flow-to-debt and net worth ratios, leverage and liquidity; and

Personal-Other: cash-flow-to-debt and net worth ratios.

While the criteria vary by model, the objective is for the borrower ratings to be consistent in both the measurement and ranking of risk. Each model is calibrated to a master rating scale to support this consistency. Ratings for borrowers not in default range from "1" for the strongest credits to "7" for the weakest non-defaulted credits. Ratings of "8" or "9" are used for defaulted borrowers. Borrower risk ratings are monitored and are revised when events or circumstances indicate a change is required. Risk ratings are validated at least annually.

Loan and lease segment and class balances as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 are provided below, segregated by borrower ratings into "1 to 3," "4 to 5" and "6 to 9" (watch list), categories.

| Table 4 | 5: Borrowe | r Ratings |
|---------|------------|-----------|
|---------|------------|-----------|

| Table 45: Borrower Raun | igs | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|------------|
| | June 30, 20 | 018 | | | December | 31, 2017 | | |
| (In Millions) | 1 to 3 Category | 4 to 5 Category | 6 to 9 Category (Watch List | Total | 1 to 3 Category | 4 to 5 Category | 6 to 9 Category (Watch List | Total |
| Commercial | | | | | | | | |
| Commercial and Institutional | \$5,822.2 | \$2,885.3 | \$ 71.7 | \$8,779.2 | \$5,832.9 | \$3,133.4 | \$ 75.9 | \$9,042.2 |
| Commercial Real Estate | 1,189.7 | 2,147.5 | 51.8 | 3,389.0 | 1,280.7 | 2,187.5 | 14.5 | 3,482.7 |
| Non-U.S. | 609.4 | 1,466.6 | 9.4 | 2,085.4 | 606.6 | 930.5 | 1.4 | 1,538.5 |
| Lease Financing, net | 118.2 | 38.2 | | 156.4 | 191.4 | 37.8 | | 229.2 |
| Other | 260.5 | 215.2 | | 475.7 | 155.5 | 109.9 | | 265.4 |
| Total Commercial | 8,000.0 | 6,752.8 | 132.9 | 14,885.7 | 8,067.1 | 6,399.1 | 91.8 | 14,558.0 |
| Personal | | | | | | | | |
| Private Client | 6,635.4 | 4,003.7 | 11.9 | 10,651.0 | 6,716.0 | 4,027.8 | 9.3 | 10,753.1 |
| Residential Real Estate | 2,889.2 | 3,719.6 | 281.7 | 6,890.5 | 2,960.5 | 3,978.8 | 308.3 | 7,247.6 |
| Other | 25.2 | 20.8 | | 46.0 | 19.6 | 13.9 | | 33.5 |
| Total Personal | 9,549.8 | 7,744.1 | 293.6 | 17,587.5 | 9,696.1 | 8,020.5 | 317.6 | 18,034.2 |
| Total Loans and Leases | \$17,549.8 | \$14,496.9 | \$ 426.5 | \$32,473.2 | \$17,763.2 | \$14,419.6 | \$ 409.4 | \$32,592.2 |

Loans and leases in the "1 to 3" category are expected to exhibit minimal to modest probabilities of default and are characterized by borrowers having the strongest financial qualities, including above average financial flexibility, cash flows and capital levels.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Borrowers assigned these ratings are anticipated to experience very little to moderate financial pressure in adverse down cycle scenarios. As a result of these characteristics, borrowers within this category exhibit a minimal to modest likelihood of loss.

Loans and leases in the "4 to 5" category are expected to exhibit moderate to acceptable probabilities of default and are characterized by borrowers with less financial flexibility than those in the "1 to 3" category. Cash flows and capital levels are generally sufficient to allow for borrowers to meet current requirements, but have fewer financial resources to manage through economic downturns. As a result of these characteristics, borrowers within this category exhibit a moderate likelihood of loss.

Loans and leases in the watch list category have elevated credit risk profiles that are monitored through internal watch lists, and consist of credits with borrower ratings of "6 to 9." These credits, which include all nonperforming credits, are expected to exhibit minimally acceptable probabilities of default, elevated risk of default, or are currently in default. Borrowers associated with these risk profiles that are not currently in default have limited financial flexibility. Cash flows and capital levels range from acceptable to potentially insufficient to meet current requirements, particularly in adverse down cycle scenarios. As a result of these characteristics, borrowers in this category exhibit an elevated likelihood of loss.

Recognition of Income. Interest income on loans is recorded on an accrual basis unless, in the opinion of management, there is a question as to the ability of the debtor to meet the terms of the loan agreement, or interest or principal is more than 90 days contractually past due and the loan is not well-secured and in the process of collection. Loans meeting such criteria are classified as nonperforming and interest income is recorded on a cash basis. At the time a loan is determined to be nonperforming, interest accrued but not collected is reversed against interest income in the current period. Interest collected on nonperforming loans is applied to principal unless, in the opinion of management, collectability of principal is not in doubt. Management's assessment of the indicators of loan and lease collectability, and its policies relative to the recognition of interest income, including the suspension and subsequent resumption of income recognition, do not meaningfully vary between loan and lease classes. Nonperforming loans are returned to performing status when factors indicating doubtful collectability no longer exist. Factors considered in returning a loan to performing status are consistent across all classes of loans and leases and, in accordance with regulatory guidance, relate primarily to expected payment performance. Loans are eligible to be returned to performing status when: (i) no principal or interest that is due is unpaid and repayment of the remaining contractual principal and interest is expected or (ii) the loan has otherwise become well-secured (possessing realizable value sufficient to discharge the debt, including accrued interest, in full) and is in the process of collection (through action reasonably expected to result in debt repayment or restoration to a current status in the near future). A loan that has not been brought fully current may be restored to performing status provided there has been a sustained period of repayment performance (generally a minimum of six months) by the borrower in accordance with the contractual terms, and Northern Trust is reasonably assured of repayment within a reasonable period of time. Additionally, a loan that has been formally restructured so as to be reasonably assured of repayment and performance according to its modified terms may be returned to accrual status, provided there was a well-documented credit evaluation of the borrower's financial condition and prospects of repayment under the revised terms and there has been a sustained period of repayment performance (generally a minimum of six months) under the revised terms.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Past due status is based on how long since the contractual due date a principal or interest payment has been past due. For disclosure purposes, loans that are 29 days past due or less are reported as current. The following tables provide balances and delinquency status of performing and nonperforming loans and leases by segment and class, as well as the total OREO and nonperforming asset balances, as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Table 46: Delinquency Status

June 30, 2018

| vane 50, 2010 | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|--|---|--|--|---|
| (In Millions) | Current | 30-59 Days Past Due | 60-89 Days Past Due | 90 Days or More Past Due | Total Performing | Nonperforming | Total Loans and Leases |
| Commercial | | | | | | | |
| Commercial and Institutiona | 1\$8,754.9 | \$ 9.5 | \$ 0.7 | \$ — | \$8,765.1 | \$ 14.1 | \$8,779.2 |
| Commercial Real Estate | 3,348.1 | 34.2 | | _ | 3,382.3 | 6.7 | 3,389.0 |
| Non-U.S. | 2,085.4 | | | _ | 2,085.4 | _ | 2,085.4 |
| Lease Financing, net | 156.4 | | | _ | 156.4 | _ | 156.4 |
| Other | 475.7 | _ | _ | _ | 475.7 | _ | 475.7 |
| Total Commercial | 14,820.5 | 43.7 | 0.7 | _ | 14,864.9 | 20.8 | 14,885.7 |
| Personal | | | | | | | |
| Private Client | 10,581.5 | 64.8 | 1.5 | 3.2 | 10,651.0 | _ | 10,651.0 |
| Residential Real Estate | 6,765.4 | 3.9 | 11.6 | 2.0 | 6,782.9 | 107.6 | 6,890.5 |
| Other | 46.0 | | | | 46.0 | _ | 46.0 |
| Total Personal | 17,392.9 | 68.7 | 13.1 | 5.2 | 17,479.9 | 107.6 | 17,587.5 |
| Total Loans and Leases | \$32,213.4 | \$ 112.4 | \$ 13.8 | \$ 5.2 | \$32,344.8 | \$ 128.4 | \$ 32,473.2 |
| | Other Real | Estate Own | ed | | | \$ 3.8 | |
| | Total Nonj | performing A | Assets | | | \$ 132.2 | |
| | | | | | | | |
| December 31, 2017 | | | | | | | |
| | | 30-59 Days | 60-89 Days | 90 Days or | Total | | Total Loans |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) | Current | | 60-89 Days Past Due | More Past | 1 otai | Nonperforming | Total Loans and Leases |
| (In Millions) | Current | 30-59 Days Past Due | 60-89 Days Past Due | • | Total Performing | Nonperforming | Total Loans and Leases |
| (In Millions) Commercial | | Past Due | Past Due | More Past Due | Performing | | and Leases |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutiona | 1\$8,999.4 | Past Due \$ 13.3 | Past Due \$ 3.1 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 | Performing \$9,016.2 | \$ 26.0 | and Leases \$ 9,042.2 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutiona Commercial Real Estate | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 | Past Due | More Past Due | Performing \$9,016.2 3,474.4 | \$ 26.0 8.3 | and Leases \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 | Past Due \$ 3.1 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 | Performing \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 | \$ 26.0 8.3 | and Leases\$ 9,042.23,482.71,538.5 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutiona Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 — | Past Due \$ 3.1 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 | Performing \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutiona Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net Other | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 265.4 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 — | Past Due \$ 3.1 4.1 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 0.9 — — | Performing \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net Other Total Commercial | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 — | Past Due \$ 3.1 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 | Performing \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net Other Total Commercial Personal | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 265.4 14,487.6 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 27.6 | Past Due \$ 3.1 4.1 — — — 7.2 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 0.9 1.3 | 10tal Performing \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,523.7 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,558.0 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net Other Total Commercial Personal Private Client | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 265.4 14,487.6 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 27.6 55.3 | Past Due \$ 3.1 4.1 — 7.2 9.7 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 0.9 1.3 | \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,523.7 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — — 34.3 | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,558.0 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net Other Total Commercial Personal Private Client Residential Real Estate | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 265.4 14,487.6 10,687.5 7,059.4 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 27.6 | Past Due \$ 3.1 4.1 — — — 7.2 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 0.9 1.3 | \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,523.7 10,753.1 7,131.2 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,558.0 10,753.1 7,247.6 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net Other Total Commercial Personal Private Client Residential Real Estate Other | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 265.4 14,487.6 10,687.5 7,059.4 33.5 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 27.6 55.3 53.8 | Past Due \$ 3.1 4.1 — 7.2 9.7 11.9 — | More Past Due \$ 0.4 0.9 — — 1.3 0.6 6.1 — | \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,523.7 10,753.1 7,131.2 33.5 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — — 34.3 — 116.4 — | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,558.0 10,753.1 7,247.6 33.5 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net Other Total Commercial Personal Private Client Residential Real Estate Other Total Personal | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 265.4 14,487.6 10,687.5 7,059.4 33.5 17,780.4 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 27.6 55.3 53.8 109.1 | Past Due \$ 3.1 4.1 — 7.2 9.7 11.9 — 21.6 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 0.9 1.3 0.6 6.1 6.7 | \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,523.7 10,753.1 7,131.2 33.5 17,917.8 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — — 34.3 — 116.4 — 116.4 | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,558.0 10,753.1 7,247.6 33.5 18,034.2 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net Other Total Commercial Personal Private Client Residential Real Estate Other | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 265.4 14,487.6 10,687.5 7,059.4 33.5 17,780.4 \$32,268.0 | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 27.6 55.3 53.8 109.1 \$ 136.7 | Past Due \$ 3.1 4.1 — 7.2 9.7 11.9 — 21.6 \$ 28.8 | More Past Due \$ 0.4 0.9 — — 1.3 0.6 6.1 — | \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,523.7 10,753.1 7,131.2 33.5 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — — 34.3 — 116.4 — 116.4 \$ 150.7 | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,558.0 10,753.1 7,247.6 33.5 |
| (In Millions) Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Non-U.S. Lease Financing, net Other Total Commercial Personal Private Client Residential Real Estate Other Total Personal | 1\$8,999.4 3,455.3 1,538.3 229.2 265.4 14,487.6 10,687.5 7,059.4 33.5 17,780.4 \$32,268.0 Other Real | Past Due \$ 13.3 14.1 0.2 27.6 55.3 53.8 109.1 | Past Due \$ 3.1 4.1 — — 7.2 9.7 11.9 — 21.6 \$ 28.8 ed | More Past Due \$ 0.4 0.9 1.3 0.6 6.1 6.7 | \$9,016.2 3,474.4 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,523.7 10,753.1 7,131.2 33.5 17,917.8 | \$ 26.0 8.3 — — 34.3 — 116.4 — 116.4 | \$ 9,042.2 3,482.7 1,538.5 229.2 265.4 14,558.0 10,753.1 7,247.6 33.5 18,034.2 |

Impaired Loans. A loan is considered to be impaired when, based on current information and events, management determines that it is probable that Northern Trust will be unable to collect all amounts due according to the contractual terms of the loan agreement. Impaired loans are identified through ongoing credit management and risk rating processes, including the formal review of past due and watch list credits. Payment performance and delinquency status are critical factors in identifying impairment for all loans and leases, particularly those within the residential real

estate, private client and personal-other classes. Other key factors considered in identifying impairment of loans and leases within the commercial and institutional, lease financing, net, non-U.S., and commercial-other classes relate to the borrower's ability to perform under the terms of the obligation as measured through the

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

assessment of future cash flows, including consideration of collateral value, market value, and other factors. A loan is also considered to be impaired if its terms have been modified as a concession by Northern Trust or a bankruptcy court resulting from the debtor's financial difficulties, referred to as a troubled debt restructuring (TDR). All TDRs are reported as impaired loans in the calendar year of their restructuring. In subsequent years, a TDR may cease being reported as impaired if the loan was modified at a market rate and has performed according to the modified terms for at least six payment periods. A loan that has been modified at a below market rate will return to performing status if it satisfies the six payment periods performance requirement; however, it will remain reported as impaired. Impairment is measured based upon the present value of expected future cash flows, discounted at the loan's original effective interest rate, the fair value of the collateral if the loan is collateral dependent, or the loan's observable market value. If the loan valuation is less than the recorded value of the loan, based on the certainty of loss, either a specific allowance is established, or a charge-off is recorded, for the difference. Smaller balance (individually less than \$1 million) homogeneous loans are collectively evaluated for impairment and excluded from impaired loan disclosures as allowed under applicable accounting standards. Northern Trust's accounting policies for material impaired loans is consistent across all classes of loans and leases.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following tables provide information related to impaired loans by segment and class.

Table 47: Impaired Loans as of the Period End

| Table 47: Impaired Loans as of the | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------|---|-----------------------|-----------------|--|-----------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| | | June 30, 20 | | | December | | | |
| (In Millions) | Record Invest | Unpaid ded Principal ment Balance | Specific Allowance | Recorde Investm | Unpaid Principal Pent Balance | Specific Allowance | | |
| With No Related Specific Allowand | ee | | | | | | | |
| Commercial and Institutional | \$3.5 | \$ 4.5 | \$ — | \$24.9 | \$ 30.3 | \$ — | | |
| Commercial Real Estate | 5.6 | 7.4 | | 5.7 | 7.6 | | | |
| Residential Real Estate | 102.3 | 137.5 | | 90.9 | 124.9 | | | |
| Private Client | 0.5 | 0.5 | _ | 0.7 | 0.7 | _ | | |
| With a Related Specific Allowance | | | | | | | | |
| Commercial and Institutional | 10.6 | 10.6 | 2.9 | 0.5 | 5.4 | 0.5 | | |
| Commercial Real Estate | 2.6 | 2.8 | 1.3 | 2.8 | 2.8 | 0.6 | | |
| Residential Real Estate | 6.7 | 7.0 | 1.9 | 14.3 | 14.9 | 4.3 | | |
| Total | | | | | | | | |
| Commercial | 22.3 | 25.3 | 4.2 | 33.9 | 46.1 | 1.1 | | |
| Personal | 109.5 | 145.0 | 1.9 | 105.9 | 140.5 | 4.3 | | |
| Total | \$131.8 | 3 \$ 170.3 | \$ 6.1 | \$139.8 | \$ 186.6 | \$ 5.4 | | |
| | Three N | Ionths End | ed June 30, | | Six Mo | nths Ended. | June 30, | |
| | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2018 | | 2017 | |
| | Average | Interest | AverageI | nterest | Averag | eInterest | Averag | eInterest |
| (In Millions) | Recorde | ethcome | Recordeli | hcome | Record | ethcome | _ | elthcome |
| | Investm | R ttcognize | d Investm& | hetcognize | ed Investn | n Ant cognized | l Investn | n Rut cognized |
| With No Related Specific | | | | | | | | |
| Allowance | | | | | | | | |
| Commercial and Institutional | \$3.6 | \$ — | \$10.9 \$ | _ | \$11.6 | \$ — | \$9.3 | \$ — |
| Commercial Real Estate | 7.3 | 0.1 | 9.4 – | _ | 7.0 | 0.1 | 11.7 | 0.1 |
| Private Client | 0.6 | | 0.1 – | | 0.6 | | 0.2 | |
| Residential Real Estate | 112.4 | 0.4 | 112.7 0 | .4 | 108.9 | 0.9 | 117.4 | 0.9 |
| With a Related Specific Allowance | | | | | | | | |
| Commercial and Institutional | 3.5 | _ | 12.4 – | _ | 2.0 | | 9.0 | |
| Commercial Real Estate | 1.4 | _ | 2.8 – | _ | 1.6 | | 2.4 | |
| Residential Real Estate | 10.7 | | 20.3 - | | 12.2 | | 18.5 | _ |
| Total | | | | | | | | |
| Commercial | 15.8 | 0.1 | 35.5 – | _ | 22.2 | 0.1 | 32.4 | 0.1 |
| Personal | 123.7 | 0.4 | 133.1 0 | .4 | 121.7 | 0.9 | 136.1 | 0.9 |
| Total | \$139.5 | \$ 0.5 | \$168.6 \$ | 0.4 | \$143.9 | \$ 1.0 | \$168.5 | \$ 1.0 |
| AT . A | | 11 . | | .1 | C. | 1 | | |

Note: Average recorded investment in impaired loans is calculated as the average of the month-end impaired loan balances for the period.

Interest income that would have been recorded for nonperforming loans in accordance with their original terms was \$2.0 million and \$2.5 million, respectively, for the three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, and \$4.2 million and \$4.8 million, respectively for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

There were \$13.6 million and \$9.4 million of aggregate undrawn loan commitments and standby letters of credit at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, issued to borrowers whose loans were classified as nonperforming or impaired.

Troubled Debt Restructurings (TDRs). Included within impaired loans were \$67.9 million and \$72.5 million of nonperforming TDRs, and \$36.3 million and \$25.9 million of performing TDRs as of June 30, 2018 and

December 31, 2017, respectively. All TDRs are reported as impaired loans in the calendar year of their restructuring. In subsequent years, a TDR may cease being reported as impaired if the loan was modified at a market rate and has performed according to the modified terms for at least six

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

months. A loan that has been modified at a below market rate will return to performing status if it satisfies the six-month performance requirement; however, it will remain reported as impaired.

The following tables provide, by segment and class, the number of loans and leases modified in TDRs during the three- and six--month periods ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, and the recorded investments and unpaid principal balances as of June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Table 48: Modified Troubled Debt Restructurings

| (\$ In Millions) | | ree Months Ine 30, 2018 | Ended | | Months End 2018 | led June |
|---|---|---|--|---|--|--|
| | Nu | mber Recorded | Unpaid | Nu | mber Recorded | Unpaid |
| | | | Principal | (1) | | Principal |
| | Loa | ans and Leas | B alance | Loa | Investment ans and Leas | B alance |
| Commercial | | | | | | |
| Commercial and Institutional | _ | | \$ — | 1 | \$ 0.3 | \$ 0.5 |
| Commercial Real Estate | 1 | 1.3 | 1.3 | 1 | 1.3 | 1.3 |
| Total Commercial | 1 | 1.3 | 1.3 | 2 | 1.6 | 1.8 |
| Personal | | | | | | |
| Private Client | | | | 1 | | 0.1 |
| Residential Real Estate | 12 | 10.0 | 11.0 | 26 | 17.6 | 19.7 |
| Total Personal | 12 | 10.0 | 11.0 | 27 | 17.6 | 19.8 |
| Total Loans and Leases | 13 | \$ 11.3 | \$ 12.3 | 29 | \$ 19.2 | \$ 21.6 |
| Note: Period-end balances re | flect | all paydow | ns and cha | rge- | offs during t | he period. |
| | | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) | Thi | ree Months I | Ended | Si | x Months En | ded June |
| (\$ In Millions) | | ree Months I ne 30, 2017 | Ended | | x Months En , 2017 | ded June |
| (\$ In Millions) | Jun | ne 30, 2017 | | 30 | , 2017 | ded June Unpaid |
| (\$ In Millions) | Jun Nu | mber Recorded | Unpaid | 30 Nu | , 2017 amber Recorded | Unpaid |
| (\$ In Millions) | Jun Nu | mber Recorded | Unpaid | 30 Nu | , 2017 umber | Unpaid |
| (\$ In Millions) Commercial | Jun Nu | mber Recorded | Unpaid | 30 Nu | , 2017 amber Recorded | Unpaid |
| | Jun Nu of Loa | ne 30, 2017 mber Recorded Investment ans and Leas | Unpaid | 30 Nu | , 2017 amber Recorded | Unpaid |
| Commercial | Jun Nu of Loa | ne 30, 2017 mber Recorded Investment ans and Leas | Unpaid Principa eBalance | 30 Nu | , 2017 Imber Recorded Investment ans and Lea | Unpaid Principal selance |
| Commercial Commercial and Institutional | Jun Nu of Loa | ne 30, 2017 mber Recorded Investment ans and Leas | Unpaid Principa eBalance | 30 Nu l of Lo | , 2017 Imber Recorded Investment oans and Lea | Unpaid Principal scBalance |
| Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate | Jun Nu of Loa | ne 30, 2017 mber Recorded Investment ans and Leas | Unpaid Principa eBalance | 30 Nu l of Lo | , 2017 Imber Recorded Investment oans and Lea \$ — 1.4 | Unpaid Principal schalance \$ — 1.3 |
| Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Total Commercial | Jun Nu of Loa | ne 30, 2017 mber Recorded Investment ans and Leas | Unpaid Principa eBalance | 30 Nu l of Lo | , 2017 Imber Recorded Investment oans and Lea \$ — 1.4 | Unpaid Principal schalance \$ — 1.3 |
| Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Total Commercial Personal | Jun Nu of Loa | te 30, 2017 mber Recorded Investment ans and Leas \$ — — | Unpaid Principa eBalance | 30 Nu l of Lo — 1 1 | , 2017 Imber Recorded Investment oans and Lea \$ — 1.4 | Unpaid Principal setalance \$ — 1.3 1.3 |
| Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Total Commercial Personal Private Client | Jun Nu of Loa — — | te 30, 2017 mber Recorded Investment ans and Leas \$ — — | Unpaid Principal eBalance \$ — — | 30 Nu l of Lo — 1 1 | , 2017 Imber Recorded Investment oans and Lea \$ — 1.4 1.4 — 12.0 | Unpaid Principal sets alance \$ — 1.3 1.3 |
| Commercial Commercial and Institutional Commercial Real Estate Total Commercial Personal Private Client Residential Real Estate | Jun Nu of Loa — — — 17 | se 30, 2017 mber Recorded Investment ans and Leas \$ — — 8.1 | Unpaid Principal eBalance \$ — — — — | 30 Nu 1 of Lo - 1 1 36 37 | , 2017 Imber Recorded Investment oans and Lea \$ — 1.4 1.4 — 12.0 | Unpaid Principal seBalance \$ — 1.3 1.3 |

Note: Period-end balances reflect all paydowns and charge-offs during the period.

TDR modifications involve extensions of term, deferrals of principal, interest rate concessions, and other modifications. Other modifications typically reflect other nonstandard terms which Northern Trust would not offer in non-troubled situations.

During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the majority of TDR modifications of loans within residential real estate were extension of term, other modifications, and deferred principal. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the majority of TDR modifications within commercial real estate were deferred principal and extension of term. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, the majority of TDR modifications of loans within residential real estate were extension of term, other modifications, interest rate concessions and deferrals of principal. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, the majority of TDR modifications within commercial real estate were extension of term and other modifications.

There was one residential real estate loan modified in a TDR during the twelve months ended March 31, 2018, which subsequently became nonperforming during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018. The total recorded

investment for this loan was approximately \$0.1 million and the unpaid principal balance for this loan was approximately \$0.1 million.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

There was one loan modified in TDR during the twelve months ended March 31, 2017, which subsequently became nonperforming during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017. The total recorded investment for this loan was approximately \$0.2 million. The unpaid principal balance for this loan was zero.

All loans and leases modified in TDRs are evaluated for impairment. The nature and extent of impairment of TDRs, including those that have experienced a subsequent default, is considered in the determination of an appropriate level of allowance for credit losses.

Northern Trust may obtain physical possession of residential real estate collateralizing a consumer mortgage loan via foreclosure on an in-substance repossession. As of June 30, 2018, Northern Trust held foreclosed residential real estate properties with a carrying value of \$3.6 million as a result of obtaining physical possession. In addition, as of June 30, 2018, Northern Trust had consumer loans with a carrying value of \$14.4 million collateralized by residential real estate property for which formal foreclosure proceedings were in process.

Note 7 – Allowance for Credit Losses

The allowance for credit losses, which represents management's estimate of probable losses related to specific borrower relationships and inherent in the various loan and lease portfolios, undrawn commitments, and standby letters of credit, is determined by management through a disciplined credit review process. Northern Trust's accounting policies related to the estimation of the allowance for credit losses and the charging off of loans, leases and other extensions of credit deemed uncollectible are consistent across both loan and lease segments.

Loans, leases and other extensions of credit deemed uncollectible are charged to the allowance for credit losses. Subsequent recoveries, if any, are credited to the allowance. Determinations as to whether an uncollectible loan is charged-off or a specific allowance is established are based on management's assessment as to the level of certainty regarding the amount of loss.

The following table provides information regarding changes in the total allowance for credit losses by segment during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Table 49: Changes in the Allowance for Credit Losses

| | Three N | Months 1 | Er | ided June | : 30, | | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------|---|--|--------------------------|-------------------------|--|--|
| | 2018 | | | | 2017 | | | | |
| (In Millions) | Comme | e Rein lon | al | Total | Commer | rd ?e lrsonal | Total | | |
| Balance at Beginning of Period | \$77.1 | \$ 70.7 | | \$147.8 | \$111.8 | \$ 77.2 | \$189.0 | | |
| Charge-Offs | (0.1) | (2.1 |) | (2.2) | (3.5) | (1.5) | (5.0) | | |
| Recoveries | 0.5 | 1.6 | | 2.1 | 0.9 | 0.9 | 1.8 | | |
| Net (Charge-Offs) Recoveries | 0.4 | (0.5) |) | (0.1) | (2.6) | (0.6) | (3.2) | | |
| Provision for Credit Losses | 4.3 | (2.8 |) | 1.5 | (11.9) | 4.9 | (7.0) | | |
| Balance at End of Period | \$81.8 | \$ 67.4 | | \$149.2 | \$97.3 | \$ 81.5 | \$178.8 | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | Six Mo | nths En | de | d June 30 |), | | | | |
| | Six Mo 2018 | nths En | de | d June 30 |), 2017 | | | | |
| (In Millions) | 2018 | | | ed June 30 Total | 2017 | r dfe rsonal | Total | | |
| (In Millions) Balance at Beginning of Period | 2018 Comme | e Rein lon | al | Total | 2017 Commer | | Total \$192.0 | | |
| | 2018 Comme \$80.8 | e Rein lon | al | Total \$153.8 | 2017 Commer \$104.9 | \$ 87.1 | \$192.0 | | |
| Balance at Beginning of Period | 2018 Comme \$80.8 | e Rein son \$ 73.0 | al | Total \$153.8 | 2017 Commer \$104.9 | \$ 87.1 | \$192.0 | | |
| Balance at Beginning of Period Charge-Offs | 2018 Commo \$80.8 (0.9) | * 73.0 | al) | Total \$153.8 (6.5) 3.4 | 2017 Commer \$104.9 (4.6) 2.5 | \$ 87.1 (5.1) 2.0 | \$192.0 (9.7) | | |
| Balance at Beginning of Period Charge-Offs Recoveries | 2018 Comme \$80.8 (0.9) | * 73.0 (5.6 2.3 | al)) | Total \$153.8 (6.5) 3.4 (3.1) | 2017 Commer \$104.9 (4.6) 2.5 (2.1) | \$ 87.1 (5.1) 2.0 | \$192.0 (9.7) 4.5 | | |

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following table provides information regarding the recorded investments in loans and leases and the allowance for credit losses by segment as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Table 50: Recorded Investments in Loans and Leases

| | June 3 | 0, 2018 | | Decen | nber 31, 20 | 017 |
|---|--------|-----------------------|----------|--------|-------------------|----------|
| (In Millions) | Comn | n Præriso lmal | Total | Comm | Peciso nal | Total |
| Loans and Leases | | | | | | |
| Specifically Evaluated for Impairment | \$22.3 | \$ 109.5 | \$ 131.8 | \$33.9 | \$ 105.9 | \$ 139.8 |
| Evaluated for Inherent Impairment | 14,863 | 3.147,478.0 | 32,341.4 | 14,524 | 1.117,928.3 | 32,452.4 |
| Total Loans and Leases | 14,885 | 5.177,587.5 | 32,473.2 | 14,558 | 3.103,034.2 | 32,592.2 |
| Allowance for Credit Losses on Credit Exposures | | | | | | |
| Specifically Evaluated for Impairment | 4.2 | 1.9 | 6.1 | 1.1 | 4.3 | 5.4 |
| Evaluated for Inherent Impairment | 60.3 | 60.8 | 121.1 | 62.4 | 63.4 | 125.8 |
| Allowance Assigned to Loans and Leases | 64.5 | 62.7 | 127.2 | 63.5 | 67.7 | 131.2 |
| Allowance for Undrawn Exposures | | | | | | |
| Commitments and Standby Letters of Credit | 17.3 | 4.7 | 22.0 | 17.3 | 5.3 | 22.6 |
| Total Allowance for Credit Losses | \$81.8 | \$ 67.4 | \$ 149.2 | \$80.8 | \$ 73.0 | \$ 153.8 |
| Night O Digital Assets | | | | | | |

Note 8 – Pledged Assets

Certain of Northern Trust's subsidiaries, as required or permitted by law, pledge assets to secure public and trust deposits, repurchase agreements and Federal Home Loan Bank borrowings, as well as for other purposes, including support for securities settlement, primarily related to client activities, for potential Federal Reserve Bank discount window borrowings, and for derivative contracts. As of June 30, 2018, securities and loans totaling \$41.9 billion (\$32.6 billion of government-sponsored agency and other securities, \$722.1 million of obligations of states and political subdivisions and \$8.6 billion of loans) were pledged. This compares to \$40.1 billion (\$30.8 billion of government-sponsored agency and other securities, \$684.3 million of obligations of states and political subdivisions and \$8.6 billion of loans) at December 31, 2017. Collateral required for these purposes totaled \$11.1 billion and \$8.9 billion at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. Included in the total pledged assets are available for sale debt securities with a total fair value of \$984.4 million and \$833.4 million, as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, which were pledged as collateral for agreements to repurchase securities sold transactions, and available for sale debt securities with a total fair value of \$41.2 million and \$39.9 million, as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively, which were pledged as collateral for derivative contracts. The secured parties to these transactions have the right to repledge or sell the securities as it relates to \$987.8 million and \$833.4 million of the pledged collateral as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

Northern Trust is not permitted, by contract or custom, to repledge or sell securities accepted as collateral under certain repurchase agreements. The total fair value of securities accepted as collateral was \$900.0 million as of June 30, 2018 and \$1.2 billion as of December 31, 2017.

Northern Trust has the right to repledge or sell securities accepted as collateral under certain repurchase agreements. The fair value of these securities accepted as collateral was \$517.8 million as of June 30, 2018 and \$78.3 million as of December 31, 2017. There was no repledged or sold collateral at June 30, 2018 or December 31, 2017.

Northern Trust has the right to repledge or sell securities accepted as collateral under derivative contracts. The total fair value of securities accepted as collateral was \$162.7 million as of June 30, 2018 and \$4.6 million as of December 31, 2017. There was no repledged or sold collateral at June 30, 2018 or December 31, 2017.

Deposits maintained to meet Federal Reserve Bank reserve requirements averaged \$1.7 billion and \$1.8 billion for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and \$1.8 billion and \$2.1 billion for the three and six months ended June 30, 2017.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 9 – Goodwill and Other Intangibles

The carrying amounts of goodwill and other intangibles assets, reflecting the effect of foreign exchange rates on non-U.S.-dollar-denominated balances, by reporting segment at June 30, 2018, and December 31, 2017, were as follows:

Table 51: Goodwill by Reporting Segment

(In Millions) June 30, December 31,

Corporate & Institutional Services \$602.4 \$ 534.5

Wealth Management 71.1 71.1

Total Goodwill \$673.5 \$ 605.6

The gross carrying amount and accumulated amortization of other intangible assets subject to amortization as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, were as follows:

Table 52: Other Intangible Assets

(In Millions) June 30, December 31,

 Comparison
 2018
 2017

 Comparison
 \$213.7
 \$222.7

 Less: Accumulated Amortization
 64.6
 61.3

 Net Book Value
 \$149.1
 \$161.4

Other intangible assets consist primarily of the value of acquired client relationships and are included within other assets in the consolidated balance sheets. Amortization expense related to other intangible assets totaled \$4.4 million and \$8.9 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, respectively, and \$2.3 million and \$4.7 million for the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, respectively. Amortization for the remainder of 2018 and for the years 2019, 2020, 2021, and 2022 is estimated to be \$8.6 million, \$17.0 million, \$17.0 million, \$14.5 million, and \$9.9 million, respectively.

In June 2018, Northern Trust completed its acquisition of Citadel Technology LLC's Omnium technology platform and associated development resources for a total purchase price of \$73.0 million. Goodwill and software intangible assets associated with the acquisition totaled \$71.4 million and \$1.6 million, respectively.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 10 – Reporting Segments

The following table shows the earnings contributions of Northern Trust's reporting segments for the three- and six-month periods ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Table 53: Results of Reporting Segments

| Months | Corporate & | | , | Wealth | | | | Treasury | and | | | Total | | | |
|--|---------------|-------------------|------|--------------------|-----|-----------------|----|---------------|-----|----------------|-----|--------------------|----|------------|----|
| Ended June | Institutional | Services |] | Managem | ent | | | Other | | | | Consolidate | ed | | |
| 30, | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| (\$ In Millions) Noninterest Income | 2018 | 2017 | | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2018 | | 2017 | |
| Trust, | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Investment | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| and Other | \$552.2 | \$487.1 | | \$390.7 | | \$361.1 | | \$ — | | \$— | | \$942.9 | | \$848.2 | |
| Servicing Fees | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Exchange | 60.1 | 50.6 | | 1.0 | | 0.0 | | 17.8 | | (1.5 | ` | 78.9 | | 40.0 | |
| Trading | 00.1 | 50.6 | | 1.0 | | 0.8 | | 17.8 | | (1.5 |) | 78.9 | | 49.9 | |
| Income | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Other Noninterest | 45.0 | 44.4 | , | 26.7 | | 26.7 | | (0.7 |) | 10.5 | | 71.0 | | 81.6 | |
| Income | 43.0 | 44.4 | • | 20.7 | | 20.7 | | (0.7 |) | 10.3 | | /1.0 | | 81.0 | |
| Net Interest | 247.0 | 176.0 | , | 200.6 | | 101.0 | | (24.0 | \ | (7.4 | , | 100.6 | | 250.4 | |
| Income* | 247.9 | 176.0 | | 209.6 | | 181.8 | | (34.9 |) | (7.4 |) | 422.6 | | 350.4 | |
| Revenue* | 905.2 | 758.1 | (| 628.0 | | 570.4 | | (17.8 |) | 1.6 | | 1,515.4 | | 1,330.1 | |
| Provision for Credit Losses | 4 () | (2.7 |) (| (1.5 |) | (4.3 |) | _ | | _ | | 1.5 | | (7.0 |) |
| Noninterest | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Expense | 599.3 | 545.6 | • | 369.5 | | 350.9 | | 28.6 | | 40.9 | | 997.4 | | 937.4 | |
| Income | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| before | 302.9 | 215.2 | , | 260.0 | | 223.8 | | (46.4 |) | (39.3 |) | 516.5 | | 399.7 | |
| Income Taxes* | | | | | | | | | , | | , | | | | |
| Provision for | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Income | 63.0 | 67.7 | (| 64.1 | | 84.3 | | (1.0 |) | (20.2 |) | 126.1 | | 131.8 | |
| Taxes* | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Net Income | | \$147.5 | | \$195.9 | | \$139.5 | | \$(45.4 |) | \$(19.1 |) | \$390.4 | | \$267.9 | |
| Percentage of | | 55 | or . | 50 | 01 | 50 | 01 | (12 |)01 | (7 | \07 | 100 | 01 | 100 | 01 |
| Consolidated Net Income | . 02 % | 55 | % : | 30 | % | 52 | % | (12 |)% | (/ |)% | 100 | % | 100 | % |
| Average | Φ02.152.1 | \$00.504.0 | | 4.2 6.006.0 | | \$26.022 | _ | 415.60 | 2 | 410.002 | • | Φ122 0.66 π | , | ф110 100 | _ |
| Assets | \$82,153.1 | \$80,584.0 | | \$26,086.3 | 3 | \$26,823. | 5 | \$15,627. | 3 | \$10,993 | .2 | \$123,866.7 | , | \$118,400. | 7 |

| Six Months | Corporate & | Wealth | Treasury and | Total |
|------------|------------------------|------------|--------------|--------------|
| Ended June | Institutional Services | Management | Other | Consolidated |

Edgar Filing: NORTHERN TRUST CORP - Form 10-Q

| 30, (\$ In Millions) Noninterest Income | 2018 | 2017 | 7 | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2018 | | 2017 | 2018 | | 2017 | |
|--|------------|-------|-------------------|----------|----|------------|---|------------|-----|----------|-------------|---|------------|---|
| Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees | \$1,096.5 | \$950 | 0.0 | \$784.1 | | \$706.4 | | \$ | | \$ | \$1,880.6 | | \$1,656.4 | |
| Foreign Exchange Trading Income | 122.5 | 99.7 | | 2.2 | | 1.7 | | 32.7 | | (3.4) | 157.4 | | 98.0 | |
| Other Noninterest Income | 91.6 | 88.6 | | 52.4 | | 52.2 | | 2.8 | | 15.4 | 146.8 | | 156.2 | |
| Net Interest Income* | 477.3 | 342. | 5 | 408.4 | | 358.8 | | (70.4 |) | 11.5 | 815.3 | | 712.8 | |
| Revenue* | 1,787.9 | 1,48 | 0.8 | 1,247.1 | | 1,119.1 | | (34.9 |) | 23.5 | 3,000.1 | | 2,623.4 | |
| Provision for | . (0.9 | (2.4 |) | (0.6 |) | (5.6 |) | | | | (1.5 | ` | (8.0) |) |
| Credit Losse | s (0.9 | (2.4 | , | (0.0) |) | (3.0 |) | _ | | _ | (1.3 |) | (0.0) | , |
| Noninterest Expense | 1,184.9 | 1,05 | 6.4 | 735.2 | | 697.2 | | 72.6 | | 78.3 | 1,992.7 | | 1,831.9 | |
| Income before Income Taxes* | 603.9 | 426. | 8 | 512.5 | | 427.5 | | (107.5 |) | (54.8) | 1,008.9 | | 799.5 | |
| Provision for | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Income | 129.8 | 134. | 6 | 126.5 | | 161.1 | | (19.4 |) | (40.2) | 236.9 | | 255.5 | |
| Taxes* | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Net Income | \$474.1 | \$292 | 2.2 | \$386.0 | | \$266.4 | | \$(88.1 |) | \$(14.6) | \$772.0 | | \$544.0 | |
| Percentage o | | | ~ | | ~ | 40 | ~ | | . ~ | (a) a | 100 | ~ | 100 | ~ |
| Consolidated | 161 % | 6 54 | \mathcal{G}_{0} | 50 | % | 49 | % | (11 |)% | (3)% | 100 | % | 100 | % |
| Net Income | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Average Assets | \$82,891.4 | \$79, | ,201.4 | \$26,097 | .1 | \$26,743.1 | l | \$15,189.8 | 8 | 11,499.3 | \$124,178.3 | į | \$117,443. | 8 |

^{*} Non-GAAP financial measures stated on a fully taxable equivalent basis (FTE). Total consolidated includes FTE adjustments of \$18.0 million for 2018 and \$17.8 million for 2017.

Further discussion of reporting segment results is provided within the "Reporting Segments" section of Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.

61

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 11 – Stockholders' Equity

Preferred Stock. The Corporation is authorized to issue 10 million shares of preferred stock without par value. The Board of Directors is authorized to fix the particular designations, preferences and relative, participating, optional and other special rights and qualifications, limitations or restrictions for each series of preferred stock issued. As of June 30, 2018, the Corporation had issued and outstanding 500,000 depositary shares, each representing a 1/100th ownership interest in a share of Series D Non-Cumulative Perpetual Preferred Stock (the "Series D Preferred Stock") issued in August 2016. Equity related to Series D Preferred Stock as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 was \$493.5 million. Shares of the Series D Preferred Stock have no par value and a liquidation preference of \$100,000 (equivalent to \$1,000 per depositary share).

Dividends on the Series D Preferred Stock, which are not mandatory, accrue and are payable on the liquidation preference amount, on a non-cumulative basis, at a rate per annum equal to (i) 4.60% from the original issue date of the Series D Preferred Stock to but excluding October 1, 2026; and (ii) a floating rate equal to Three-Month LIBOR plus 3.202% from and including October 1, 2026. Fixed rate dividends are payable in arrears on the 1st day of April and October of each year, through and including October 1, 2026, and floating rate dividends will be payable in arrears on the 1st day of January, April, July and October of each year, commencing on January 1, 2027. As of June 30, 2018, the Corporation also had issued and outstanding 16 million depositary shares, each representing 1/1000th ownership interest in a share of Series C Non-Cumulative Perpetual Preferred Stock ("Series C Preferred Stock"), issued in August 2014. Equity related to Series C Preferred Stock as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 was \$388.5 million. Series C Preferred Stock has no par value and has a liquidation preference of \$25,000 (equivalent to \$25 per depositary share).

Dividends on the Series C Preferred Stock, which are not mandatory, accrue and are payable on the liquidation preference amount, on a non-cumulative basis, quarterly in arrears on the first day of January, April, July and October of each year, at a rate per annum equal to 5.85%. On April 17, 2018, the Corporation declared a cash dividend of \$365.625 per share of Series C Preferred Stock payable on July 1, 2018, to stockholders of record as of June 15, 2018. Common Stock. During the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, the Corporation repurchased 1,787,701 shares of common stock, including 5,986 shares withheld related to share-based compensation, at a total cost of \$190.6 million (\$106.63 average price per share) and 4,305,710 shares of common stock, including 385,109 shares withheld related to share-based compensation, at a total cost of \$453.8 million (\$105.39 average price per share), respectively. These repurchases were made under the common stock repurchase authorization approved by the Corporation's Board of Directors in July 2017. On July 17, 2018, this program was terminated and replaced with a new repurchase program, under which the Corporation's Board of Directors authorized the Corporation to repurchase up to 25.0 million shares of the Corporation's common stock. Shares repurchased by the Corporation are used for general purposes, including management of the Corporation's capital level and the issuance of shares under stock option and other incentive plans of the Corporation. The repurchase authorization approved by the Board of Directors has no expiration date.

Under the Corporation's 2018 Capital Plan, which was reviewed without objection by the Federal Reserve, the Corporation may repurchase up to \$1.0 billion of common stock after June 30, 2018 through June 30, 2019.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 12 – Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)

The following tables summarize the components of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) (AOCI) at June 30, 2018 and 2017, and changes during the three- and six-month periods then ended.

Table 54: Summary of Changes in Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)

| (In Millions) | Balance at June 30, 2018 | | Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from AOCI | Balance at December 31, 2017 |
|--|-----------------------------------|------|---|------------------------------|
| Net Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Debt Securities Available for Sale* | \$(167.5) \$ (74.9 |) | \$ (17.8) | \$ (74.8) |
| Net Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Cash Flow Hedges | (1.8) (7.2) |) | 0.9 | 4.5 |
| Net Foreign Currency Adjustments | 46.2 0.5 | | 47.5 | (1.8) |
| Net Pension and Other Postretirement Benefit Adjustments | (385.0) 13.1 | | (55.9) | (342.2) |
| Total | \$(508.1) \$ (68.5) |) | \$ (25.3) | \$ (414.3) |
| | Balance at | | Balance a | |
| (In Millions) | June 30, Ne | t Ch | ange December | r 31, |
| | 2017 | | 2016 | |
| Net Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Debt Securities Available for S | Sale \$(11.5) \$ | 20.9 | \$ (32.4 |) |
| Net Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Cash Flow Hedges | 3.1 (3. | 0 |) 6.1 | |
| Net Foreign Currency Adjustments | (11.6) 6.9 |) | (18.5 |) |
| Net Pension and Other Postretirement Benefit Adjustments | (318.9) 6.3 | 3 | (325.2 |) |
| Total | \$(338.9) \$ | 31.1 | \$ (370.0 |) |

^{*} Includes net unrealized gains on debt securities transferred from available for sale to held to maturity during the year ended December 31, 2017.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

| Table 55: Details of Changes | s in Accumulated O | Other Comprehensive 1 | Income (Loss) |
|------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| | | | |

| | Three N | Лc | onths End | deo | d June 30, | | | | | | |
|---|------------|----|-------------------|-----|-------------------------|---|----------|-------------------|----|---------|----|
| | 2018 | | | | | | 2017 | | | | |
| (In Millions) | Before | Τá | a T ax Eff | ect | After Tax | K | Before 7 | Γ a αx Eff | ec | After T | ax |
| Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Debt Securities Available | | | | | | | | | | | |
| for Sale | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Debt Securities Available | \$(26.4 | ` | \$ 6.5 | | \$(19.9 | ` | \$2.1 | \$ (0.8 |) | \$ 1.3 | |
| for Sale | \$(20.4 |) | \$ 0.5 | | φ(19.9) | , | φ2.1 | \$ (0.6 |) | Ф 1.3 | |
| Reclassification Adjustment for (Gains) Losses Included | 1 | | | | | | 0.4 | (0.2 | ` | 0.2 | |
| in Net Income | | | | | | | 0.4 | (0.2 |) | 0.2 | |
| Net Change | \$(26.4 |) | \$ 6.5 | | \$(19.9) |) | \$2.5 | \$ (1.0 |) | \$ 1.5 | |
| Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Cash Flow Hedges | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | \$12.2 | | \$ (3.1 |) | \$9.1 | | \$7.3 | \$ (2.5 |) | \$ 4.8 | |
| Interest Rate Contracts | 0.1 | | | | 0.1 | | 1.6 | (0.6) |) | 1.0 | |
| Reclassification Adjustment for (Gains) Losses Included | l (17.0 |) | 4.3 | | (12.7 | ` | (5.4) | 1.9 | | (3.5 | ` |
| in Net Income | (17.0 | , | 4.5 | | (12.7 | , | (3.4) | 1.9 | | (3.3 | , |
| Net Change | \$(4.7 |) | \$ 1.2 | | \$(3.5) |) | \$3.5 | \$ (1.2 |) | \$ 2.3 | |
| Foreign Currency Adjustments | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign Currency Translation Adjustments | \$(105.5 | 5) | \$ 2.3 | | \$(103.2) |) | \$66.8 | \$ 1.2 | | \$ 68.0 | |
| Long-Term Intra-Entity Foreign Currency Transaction | (1.9 | ` | 0.6 | | (1.3 | ` | 0.4 | (0.1 |) | 0.3 | |
| Gains (Losses) | (1.9 |) | 0.0 | | (1.5 | , | 0.4 | (0.1 |) | 0.5 | |
| Net Investment Hedge Gains (Losses) | 157.7 | | (39.6 |) | 118.1 | | (102.0) | 38.6 | | (63.4 |) |
| Net Change | \$50.3 | | \$ (36.7 |) | \$13.6 | | \$(34.8) | \$ 39.7 | | \$ 4.9 | |
| Pension and Other Postretirement Benefit Adjustments | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Reclassification Adjustment for (Gains) Losses Included | 1 0 5 | | (2.1 |) | 7.4 | | 6.7 | (2.4 |) | 4.3 | |
| in Net Income | 9.5 | | (2.1 | , | / . + | | 0.7 | (2.4 | , | 4.5 | |
| Net Change | \$9.5 | | \$ (2.1 |) | \$7.4 | | \$6.7 | \$ (2.4 |) | \$ 4.3 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 64 | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table of Contents

65

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

| (L. M.H) | 2018 | | hs Ended | | • | | 2017 Parform 7 | W F.66 | | A 6 T | ١ |
|---|----------------|-----|-----------|----|----------|----|-------------------|-----------|-----|---------|----|
| (In Millions) | Before | 1 8 | ax ax em | ec | Atter 1 | ax | Before 7 | I axax Em | eci | After 1 | ax |
| Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Securities Available for | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sale | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Securities Available for | \$(101.8 | 3) | \$ 26.9 | | \$ (74.9 |) | \$33.0 | \$ (12.5 |) | \$ 20.5 | |
| Sale | Φ(101.0 | ,, | Ψ 20.7 | | Ψ (7 1.) | , | Ψ33.0 | ψ (12.3 | , | Ψ 20.5 | |
| Reclassification Adjustment for (Gains) Losses Included | | | | | | | 0.6 | (0.2 | ` | 0.4 | |
| in Net Income | _ | | _ | | _ | | 0.0 | (0.2 |) | 0.4 | |
| Net Change | \$(101.8 | 3) | \$ 26.9 | | \$ (74.9 |) | \$33.6 | \$ (12.7 |) | \$ 20.9 | |
| Unrealized Gains (Losses) on Cash Flow Hedges | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | \$25.2 | | \$ (6.2 |) | \$ 19.0 | | \$16.2 | \$ (13.5 |) | \$ 2.7 | |
| Interest Rate Contracts | (1.3 |) | 0.3 | ĺ | (1.0 |) | 1.3 | (0.5 |) | 0.8 | |
| Reclassification Adjustment for (Gains) Losses Included | ` | (| | | | ĺ | | ` | _ | | |
| in Net Income | (33.6 |) | 8.4 | | (25.2 |) | (10.5) | 4.0 | | (6.5 |) |
| Net Change | \$(9.7 |) | \$ 2.5 | | \$ (7.2 |) | \$7.0 | \$ (10.0 |) | \$ (3.0 |) |
| Foreign Currency Adjustments | • | | | | • | | | ` | | ` | |
| Foreign Currency Translation Adjustments | \$(60.9 |) | \$ (0.5 |) | \$ (61.4 |) | \$89.2 | \$ (0.3 |) | \$ 88.9 | |
| Long-Term Intra-Entity Foreign Currency Transaction | · | | • | | | | | | (| 0.2 | |
| Gains (Losses) | (0.7 |) | 0.3 | | (0.4 |) | 0.4 | (0.1 |) | 0.3 | |
| Net Investment Hedge Gains (Losses) | 83.4 | | (21.1 |) | 62.3 | | (132.4) | 50.1 | | (82.3 |) |
| Net Change | \$21.8 | | • |) | \$ 0.5 | | \$(42.8) | | | \$ 6.9 | |
| Pension and Other Postretirement Benefit Adjustments | , | | , , , , , | , | , | | , (, , , | , | | , | |
| Net Actuarial Gain (Loss) | \$10.1 | | \$ (2.5 |) | \$ 7.6 | | \$(2.3) | \$ — | | \$ (2.3 |) |
| Reclassification Adjustment for (Gains) Losses Included | | | • | ĺ | | | , , | | | • | |
| in Net Income | 18.6 | | (13.1 |) | 5.5 | | 13.1 | (4.5 |) | 8.6 | |
| Net Change | \$28.7 | | \$ (15.6 |) | \$ 13.1 | | \$10.8 | \$ (4.5 |) | \$ 6.3 | |
| 1.00 0.000 | Ψ 2 0.7 | | Ψ (10.0 | , | ψ 10.1 | | Ψ 10.0 | 4 (| , | ¥ 0.0 | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following table provides the location and before-tax amounts of reclassifications out of AOCI during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018.

Table 56: Reclassification Adjustment out of Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income

| (In Millions) | Location of Reclassification Adjustments Recognized in Income | Amount Reclassi Adjustm Recogni in Incom Three Months Ended June 30, | fication tents zed ne Six Months Ended | |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| Debt Securities Available for Sale Realized (Gains) Losses on Debt Securities Available for Sale Realized (Gains) Losses on Cash Flow Hadges | Investment Security Gains (Losses), net | \$— | \$— | |
| Realized (Gains) Losses on Cash Flow Hedges Foreign Exchange Contracts | Other Operating Income Interest Income Other Operating Expense | | \$(3.5) (30.2) | |
| Interest Rate Contracts Total Realized Gains on Cash Flow Hedges Pension and Other Postretirement Benefit Adjustments | Interest Income | | 0.1 \$(33.6) | |
| Amortization of Net Actuarial Loss Amortization of Prior Service Cost Gross Reclassification Adjustment | Employee Benefits Employee Benefits | _ | \$18.7 (0.1) \$18.6 | |
| (In Millions) | Location of Reclassification Adjustments Recognized in Income | Amount Reclassi Adjustn Recogni in Incon Three Months Ended June 30. | ification nents ized me Six Months Ended | |
| Debt Securities Available for Sale Realized (Gains) Losses on Debt Securities Available for Sale | Investment Security Gains (Losses), net | | \$0.6 | |
| Realized (Gains) Losses on Cash Flow Hedges | | | | |
| Realized (Gains) Losses on Cash Flow Hedges Foreign Exchange Contracts | Other Operating Income Interest Income Other Operating Expense | (3.5) | \$(2.5) (7.9) 0.1 | |
| · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | (3.5) — (0.1) | (7.9) 0.1 | |

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 13 – Net Income Per Common Share Computations

The computations of net income per common share are presented in the following table.

Table 57: Net Income per Common Share

| Table 37. Net meome per common share | | |
|--|-------------------------------|-------------------------|
| | Three Months | Six Months Ended |
| | Ended June 30, | June 30, |
| (\$ In Millions Except Per Common Share Information) | 2018 2017 | 2018 2017 |
| Basic Net Income Per Common Share | | |
| Average Number of Common Shares Outstanding | 224,207 2599 ()196,531 | 224,940,230,128,414 |
| Net Income | \$390.4 \$ 267.9 | \$772.0 \$ 544.0 |
| Less: Dividends on Preferred Stock | 5.9 5.9 | 23.2 26.6 |
| Net Income Applicable to Common Stock | \$384.5 \$ 262.0 | 748.8 517.4 |
| Less: Earnings Allocated to Participating Securities | 5.0 4.4 | 10.2 8.9 |
| Earnings Allocated to Common Shares Outstanding | \$379.5 \$ 257.6 | 738.6 508.5 |
| Basic Net Income Per Common Share | \$1.69 \$ 1.12 | \$3.28 \$ 2.22 |
| Diluted Net Income Per Common Share | | |
| Average Number of Common Shares Outstanding | 224,207 2599 0,196,531 | 224,940,230,128,414 |
| Plus: Dilutive Effect of Share-based Compensation | 1,403,8017,441,292 | 1,385,184,505,954 |
| Average Common and Potential Common Shares | 225,611,23907,637,823 | 3 226,325,24302,634,368 |
| Earnings Allocated to Common and Potential Common Shares | \$379.5 \$ 257.6 | \$738.6 \$ 508.5 |
| Diluted Net Income Per Common Share | \$1.68 \$ 1.12 | 3.26 2.21 |

Note: For the three and six months ended June 30, 2018, there were no common stock equivalents excluded in the computation of diluted net income per share. There were no common stock equivalents excluded in the computation of diluted net income per share for the three months ended June 30, 2017. Common stock equivalents of 232,897 for the six months ended June 30, 2017 were not included in the computation of diluted net income per common share because their inclusion would have been antidilutive.

Note 14 – Revenue from Contracts with Clients

Trust, Investment, and Other Servicing Fees. Custody and fund administration income is comprised of revenues received from our core asset servicing business for providing custody, fund administration, and middle-office-related services, primarily to C&IS clients. Investment management and advisory income contains revenue received from providing asset management and related services to Wealth Management and C&IS clients and to Northern Trust sponsored funds. Securities lending income represents revenues generated from securities lending arrangements that Northern Trust enters into as agent, mainly with C&IS clients. Other income largely consists of revenues received from providing employee benefit, investment risk and analytic and other services to C&IS and Wealth Management clients

Other Noninterest Income. Treasury management income represents revenues received from providing cash and liquidity management services to C&IS and Wealth Management clients. The portion of securities commissions and trading income that relates to revenue from contracts with clients is primarily comprised of commissions earned from providing securities brokerage services to Wealth Management and C&IS clients. The portion of other operating income that relates to revenue from contracts with clients is mainly comprised of service fees for banking-related services provided to Wealth Management and C&IS clients.

Performance Obligations. Clients are typically charged monthly or quarterly in arrears based on the fee arrangement agreed to with each client; payment terms will vary depending on the client and services offered.

Substantially all revenues generated from contracts with clients for asset servicing, asset management, securities lending, treasury management and banking-related services are recognized on an accrual basis, over the period in which services are provided. The nature of Northern Trust's performance obligations is to provide a series of distinct services in which the customer simultaneously receives and consumes the benefits of the promised services as they are performed. Fee arrangements are mainly comprised of variable amounts based on market value of client assets managed and serviced, transaction volumes, number of accounts, and securities lending volume and spreads. Revenue

is recognized using the output method in an amount that reflects the consideration to which Northern Trust expects to be entitled in exchange for providing each month or quarter of service. For contracts with

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

multiple performance obligations, revenue is allocated to each performance obligation based on the price agreed to with the client, representing its relative standalone selling price.

Security brokerage revenue is primarily represented by securities commissions received in exchange of providing trade execution related services. Control is transferred at a point in time, on the trade date of the transaction, and fees are typically variable based on transaction volumes and security types.

Northern Trust's contracts with its clients are typically open ended arrangements. Northern Trust has elected to apply the practical expedient for disclosure requirements allowed in ASU 2014-09 for performance obligations that are included in contracts with an original duration of less than one year.

The following table presents revenues disaggregated by major revenue source.

Table 58: Revenue Disaggregation

| | Three | Six |
|--|-----------|-----------|
| | Months | Months |
| (In Millions) | Ended | Ended |
| | June 30, | June 30, |
| | 2018 | 2018 |
| Noninterest Income | | |
| Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees | | |
| Custody and Fund Administration | \$399.1 | \$795.0 |
| Investment Management and Advisory | 465.0 | 930.6 |
| Securities Lending | 30.4 | 56.6 |
| Other | 48.4 | 98.4 |
| Total Trust, Investment and Other Servicing Fees | \$942.9 | \$1,880.6 |
| Other Noninterest Income | | |
| Foreign Exchange Income | \$78.9 | \$157.4 |
| Treasury Management | 13.5 | 27.5 |
| Securities Commissions and Trading Income | 26.1 | 53.3 |
| Other Operating Income | 31.4 | 66.2 |
| Investment Security Losses, net | _ | (0.2) |
| Total Other Noninterest Income | \$149.9 | \$304.2 |
| Total Noninterest Income | \$1,092.8 | \$2,184.8 |

Trust, investment and other servicing fees and treasury management fees represent revenue from contracts with clients. For the three months ended June 30, 2018, revenue from contracts with clients also includes \$22.3 million of the \$26.1 million total securities commissions and trading income and \$11.6 million of the \$31.4 million total other operating income. For the six months ended June 30, 2018, revenue from contracts with clients also includes \$46.3 million of the \$53.3 million total securities commissions and trading income and \$22.9 million of the \$66.2 million total other operating income.

Receivables Balances. The table below represents receivables balances from contracts with clients, which are included in other assets in the consolidated balance sheets, at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Table 59: Client Receivables

| (In Millions) | June 30, | December 31, |
|--------------------------------|----------|--------------|
| (III WIIIIOIIS) | 2018 | 2017 |
| Trust Fees Receivable, net (1) | \$720.1 | \$ 629.7 |
| Other | 80.3 | 79.0 |
| Total Client Receivables | \$800.4 | \$ 708.7 |

⁽¹⁾ The net trust fees receivable balance at December 31, 2017 does not reflect the reduction for an estate settlement revenue transition adjustment of \$2.7 million, which was recorded with an effective date of January 1, 2018.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 15 – Net Interest Income

The components of net interest income were as follows:

Table 60: Net Interest Income

| | Three N | Months | Six Mont | hs |
|---|---------|---------------|-----------|---------|
| | Ended J | June 30, | Ended Ju | ne 30, |
| (In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| Interest Income | | | | |
| Loans and Leases | \$271.4 | \$224.4 | \$523.4 | \$437.8 |
| Securities — Taxable | 219.1 | 135.0 | 396.9 | 278.2 |
| — Non-Taxable | 1.9 | 2.5 | 3.9 | 5.1 |
| Interest-Bearing Due from and Deposits with Banks (1) | 18.3 | 14.1 | 38.2 | 29.0 |
| Federal Reserve and Other Central Bank Deposits | 57.0 | 41.2 | 111.2 | 77.4 |
| Total Interest Income | \$567.7 | \$417.2 | \$1,073.6 | \$827.5 |
| Interest Expense | | | | |
| Deposits | \$77.3 | \$41.0 | 140.4 | 68.6 |
| Federal Funds Purchased | 13.6 | 0.9 | 18.9 | 1.4 |
| Securities Sold Under Agreements to Repurchase | 2.0 | 1.3 | 4.7 | 2.2 |
| Other Borrowings | 35.9 | 10.0 | 62.4 | 17.6 |
| Senior Notes | 11.7 | 11.8 | 23.5 | 23.5 |
| Long-Term Debt | 12.0 | 9.6 | 23.0 | 17.0 |
| Floating Rate Capital Debt | 1.9 | 1.1 | 3.4 | 2.2 |
| Total Interest Expense | \$154.4 | \$75.7 | \$276.3 | \$132.5 |
| Net Interest Income | \$413.3 | \$341.5 | \$797.3 | \$695.0 |

⁽¹⁾ Interest-Bearing Due from and Deposits with Banks includes the interest-bearing component of Cash and Due from Banks and Interest-Bearing Deposits with Banks as presented on the consolidated balance sheets.

Note 16 – Income Taxes

Income tax expense for the three months ended June 30, 2018 and June 30, 2017 was \$116.8 million and \$122.9 million, representing an effective tax rate of 23.0% and 31.4%, respectively.

Income tax expense for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and June 30, 2017 was \$218.9 million and \$237.7 million, representing an effective tax rate of 22.1% and 30.4%, respectively. For the six months ended June 30, 2018, the provision for income taxes includes a \$22.6 million benefit resulting from a change in accounting method regarding the timing of tax deductions for software development-related expenses, partially offset by a \$15.8 million net provision recorded in the first quarter of 2018 representing adjustments to the initial estimated impact of the TCJA recorded in the fourth quarter of 2017.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 17 – Pension and Postretirement Health Care

The following tables set forth the net periodic pension and postretirement benefit expense for Northern Trust's U.S. and non-U.S. pension plans, supplemental pension plan, and postretirement health care plan for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Table 61: Net Periodic Pension Expense (Benefit)

| | Three | | Six Months |
|---------------------------------|----------------|-------------|---------------|
| Net Periodic Pension Expense | Month | S | Ended June |
| U.S. Plan | Ended | June | |
| | 30, | | 30, |
| (In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 2017 |
| Service Cost | \$10.3 | \$9.6 | \$20.7 \$19.2 |
| Interest Cost | 11.1 | 11.5 | 22.2 23.0 |
| Expected Return on Plan Assets | (22.1) | (23.5) | (44.1) (47.0) |
| Amortization | | | |
| Net Actuarial Loss | 7.0 | 4.8 | 14.1 9.6 |
| Prior Service Cost | (0.1) | (0.1) | (0.2)(0.2) |
| Net Periodic Pension Expense | \$6.2 | \$2.3 | \$12.7 \$4.6 |
| • | Three | | C: M 4 |
| Net Periodic Pension Expense | Month | 16 | Six Months |
| Non-U.S. Plans | Ended | lline | Ended June |
| | 30, | | 30, |
| (In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 2017 |
| Service Cost | \$0.4 | \$ — | \$0.8 \$— |
| Interest Cost | 1.0 | 1.0 | 2.0 1.9 |
| Expected Return on Plan Assets | (1.1) | (1.1) | (2.2)(2.2) |
| Settlement Expense | 0.4 | | 0.4 0.2 |
| Net Actuarial Loss Amortization | 0.3 | 0.3 | 0.6 0.6 |
| Net Periodic Pension Expense | \$1.0 | \$0.4 | \$1.6 \$0.5 |
| _ | 'hree | Six | |
| Net Periodic Pension Expense M | I onths | Mor | nths |
| _ | inded | End | ed |
| | une 30, | June | 230, |
| | 018 201 | | |
| | 1.1 \$0 | .9 \$2.2 | 2 \$ 1.8 |
| Interest Cost 1 | .4 1.3 | 2.7 | 2.6 |
| Amortization | | | |
| Net Actuarial Loss 1 | .8 1.4 | 3.6 | 2.8 |
| Prior Service Cost 0 | .1 — | 0.1 | _ |
| Net Periodic Pension Expense \$ | 4.4 \$3 | .6 \$8.6 | 5 \$7.2 |
| _ | Tł | rree | Six |
| Net Periodic Postretirement Exp | ense M | onths | Months |
| Postretirement Health Care Plan | Er | nded | Ended |
| | Ju | ne 30, | June 30, |
| (In Millions) | 20 | 18 201 | 7 2018 2017 |
| Interest Cost | \$(| 0.4 \$0. | 4 \$0.7 \$0.8 |
| Net Periodic Postretirement Exp | ense \$(| 0.4 \$0. | 4 \$0.7 \$0.8 |

Net Periodic Postretirement Expense \$0.4 \$0.4 \$0.7 \$0.8 The components of net periodic pension expense are included in the line item "Employee Benefits" expense in the consolidated statements of income.

Northern Trust contributed \$50.0 million to the U.S. pension plan during the six months ended June 30, 2018. There were no contributions to the U.S. pension plan during the six months ended June 30, 2017.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 18 – Share-Based Compensation Plans

The Northern Trust Corporation 2017 Long-Term Incentive Plan provides for the grant of nonqualified and incentive stock options; tandem and free-standing stock appreciation rights; stock awards in the form of restricted stock, restricted stock units and other stock awards; and performance awards.

Beginning with the grants made on February 21, 2017 under the Corporation's prior equity incentive plan, restricted stock unit and performance stock unit grants continue to vest in accordance with the original terms of the award if the applicable employee retires after satisfying applicable age and service requirements. For all applicable periods, stock option grants continue to vest in accordance with the original terms of the award if the applicable employee retires after satisfying applicable age and service requirements. Current-quarter compensation expense included \$10.6 million attributable to performance stock units granted to retirement-eligible employees that are expensed from the date of grant through the requisite service period which ends on June 30, 2018, compared to \$7.2 million in the prior-year quarter.

Total compensation expense for share-based payment arrangements and the associated tax impacts were as follows for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Table 62: Total Compensation Expense for Share-Based Payment Arrangements

| | Three Month Ended 30, | | Six M Ended 30, | |
|--|-----------------------|--------|-----------------------|--------|
| (In Millions) | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| Restricted Stock Unit Awards | \$18.1 | \$15.6 | \$64.8 | \$56.8 |
| Stock Options | 0.7 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 7.3 |
| Performance Stock Units | 14.4 | 12.0 | 23.4 | 20.5 |
| Total Share-Based Compensation Expense | 33.2 | 28.6 | 89.7 | 84.6 |
| Tax Benefits Recognized | \$8.2 | \$10.7 | \$22.2 | \$31.9 |
| | | | | |

Note 19 – Variable Interest Entities

Variable Interest Entities (VIEs) are defined within GAAP as entities which either have a total equity investment that is insufficient to permit the entity to finance its activities without additional subordinated financial support or whose equity investors lack the characteristics of a controlling financial interest. Investors that finance a VIE through debt or equity interests, or other counterparties that provide other forms of support, such as guarantees, subordinated fee arrangements, or certain types of derivative contracts, are variable interest holders in the entity and the variable interest holder, if any, that has both the power to direct the activities that most significantly impact the entity and a variable interest that could potentially be significant to the entity is deemed to be the VIE's primary beneficiary and is required to consolidate the VIE.

Leveraged Leases. In leveraged leasing transactions, Northern Trust acts as lessor of the underlying asset subject to the lease and typically funds 20 - 30% of the asset's cost via an equity ownership in a trust with the remaining 70 - 80% provided by third-party non-recourse debt holders. In such transactions, the trusts, which are VIEs, are created to provide the lessee use of the property with substantially all of the rights and obligations of ownership. The lessee's maintenance and operation of the leased property has a direct effect on the fair value of the underlying property, and the lessee also has the ability to increase the benefits it can receive and limit the losses it can suffer by the manner in which it uses the property. As a result, Northern Trust has determined that it is not the primary beneficiary of the leveraged lease trust VIEs given it lacks the power to direct the activities that most significantly impact the economic performance of the leveraged lease trust VIEs.

Northern Trust's maximum exposure to loss as a result of its involvement with leveraged lease trust VIEs is limited to the carrying amounts of its leveraged lease investments. As of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the carrying amounts of these investments, which are included in loans and leases in the consolidated balance sheets, were \$83.2 million and \$131.0 million, respectively. Northern Trust's funding requirements relative to the leveraged lease trust VIEs are limited to its invested capital. Northern Trust has no other liquidity arrangements or obligations to purchase

assets of the leveraged lease trust VIEs that would expose Northern Trust to a loss.

Tax Credit Structures. Northern Trust invests in qualified affordable housing projects and community development entities (collectively, community development projects) that are designed to generate a return primarily through the realization of tax credits. The community development projects are formed as limited partnerships and limited liability companies in which Northern

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Trust invests as a limited partner/investor member through equity contributions. The economic performance of the community development projects, some of which are VIEs, is subject to the performance of their underlying investment and their ability to operate in compliance with the rules and regulations necessary for the qualification of tax credits generated by equity investments. Northern Trust has determined that it is not the primary beneficiary of any community development project VIEs as it lacks the power to direct the activities that most significantly impact the economic performance of the underlying investments or to affect their ability to operate in compliance with the rules and regulations necessary for the qualification of tax credits generated by equity investments. This power is held by the general partners and managing members who exercise full and exclusive control of the operations of the community development project VIEs.

Northern Trust's maximum exposure to loss as a result of its involvement with community development projects is limited to the carrying amounts of its investments, including any undrawn commitments. As of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, the carrying amounts of these investments in community development projects that generate tax credits, included in other assets in the consolidated balance sheets, totaled \$472.0 million and \$415.3 million, respectively, of which \$415.5 million and \$386.1 million are VIEs as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. As of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, liabilities related to unfunded commitments on investments in tax credit community development projects, included in other liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets, totaled \$286.1 million and \$241.1 million, respectively, of which \$239.5 million and \$215.2 million, related to undrawn commitments on VIEs as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. Northern Trust's funding requirements are limited to its invested capital and undrawn commitments for future equity contributions. Northern Trust has no exposure to loss from liquidity arrangements and no obligation to purchase assets of the community development projects.

Tax credits and other tax benefits attributable to community development projects totaled \$14.8 million and \$11.9 million for the three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively, and \$29.5 million and \$24.0 million for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

Investment Funds. Northern Trust acts as asset manager for various funds in which clients of Northern Trust are investors. As an asset manager of funds, Northern Trust earns a competitively priced fee that is based on assets managed and varies with each fund's investment objective. Based on its analysis, Northern Trust has determined that it is not the primary beneficiary of these VIEs under GAAP.

Some of the funds for which Northern Trust acts as asset manager comply or operate in accordance with requirements that are similar to those in Rule 2a-7 of the Investment Company Act of 1940 for registered money market funds and therefore the funds are exempt from the consolidation requirements in Accounting Standards Codification 810-10. Northern Trust did not waive any money market mutual fund fees for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018. Northern Trust voluntarily waived \$0.3 million and \$0.5 million of money market mutual fund fees for the three and six months ended June 30, 2017, respectively. Northern Trust does not have any contractual obligations to provide financial support to the funds. Any potential future support of the funds will be at the discretion of Northern Trust after an evaluation of the specific facts and circumstances.

Periodically, Northern Trust makes seed capital investments to certain funds. As of June 30, 2018, Northern Trust had no seed capital investments and had \$100.0 million of unfunded commitments related to seed capital investments. As of December 31, 2017, Northern Trust had \$10.0 million of investments valued using net asset value per share and included in other assets and had no unfunded commitments related to seed capital investments.

Note 20 – Contingent Liabilities

Commitments, Letters of Credit and Indemnifications. Northern Trust, in the normal course of business, enters into various types of commitments and issues letters of credit to meet the liquidity and credit enhancement needs of its clients.

Legally binding commitments to extend credit generally have fixed expiration dates or other termination clauses. Since a significant portion of the commitments are expected to expire without being drawn upon, the total commitment amount does not necessarily represent future loans or liquidity requirements. Legally binding commitments to extend credit totaled \$25.7 billion and \$26.8 billion as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

Standby letters of credit obligate Northern Trust to meet certain financial obligations of its clients, if, under the contractual terms of the agreement, the clients are unable to do so. These instruments are primarily issued to support public and private financial commitments, including commercial paper, bond financing, initial margin requirements on futures exchanges and similar transactions. Northern Trust is obligated to meet the entire financial obligation of these agreements and in certain cases is able to recover the amounts paid through recourse against collateral received or other participants. Standby letters of credit outstanding were \$2.7 billion and \$3.0 billion as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

As part of its securities custody activities and at the direction of its clients, Northern Trust lends securities owned by clients to borrowers who are reviewed and approved by the Northern Trust Counterparty Risk Management Committee. In connection with these activities, Northern Trust has issued indemnifications to certain clients against certain losses that are a direct result of a borrower's failure to return securities when due, should the value of such securities exceed the value of the collateral required to be posted. Borrowers are required to collateralize fully securities received with cash or marketable securities. As securities are loaned, collateral is maintained at a minimum of 100% of the fair value of the securities plus accrued interest. The collateral is revalued on a daily basis. The amount of securities loaned as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017 subject to indemnification was \$146.8 billion and \$143.6 billion, respectively. Because of the credit quality of the borrowers and the requirement to collateralize fully securities borrowed, management believes that the exposure to credit loss from this activity is not significant and no liability was recorded as of June 30, 2018 or December 31, 2017, related to these indemnifications. Legal Proceedings. In the normal course of business, the Corporation and its subsidiaries are routinely defendants in or parties to pending and threatened legal actions, and are subject to regulatory examinations, information-gathering requests, investigations, and proceedings, both formal and informal. In certain legal actions, claims for substantial monetary damages are asserted. In regulatory matters, claims for disgorgement, restitution, penalties and/or other remedial actions or sanctions may be sought.

Based on current knowledge, after consultation with legal counsel and after taking into account current accruals, management does not believe that losses, fines or penalties, if any, arising from pending litigation or threatened legal actions or regulatory matters either individually or in the aggregate, after giving effect to applicable reserves and insurance coverage will have a material adverse effect on the consolidated financial position or liquidity of the Corporation, although such matters could have a material adverse effect on the Corporation's operating results for a particular period.

Under GAAP, (i) an event is "probable" if the "future event or events are likely to occur"; (ii) an event is "reasonably possible" if "the chance of the future event or events occurring is more than remote but less than likely"; and (iii) an event is "remote" if "the chance of the future event or events occurring is slight."

The outcome of litigation and regulatory matters is inherently difficult to predict and/or the range of loss often cannot be reasonably estimated, particularly for matters that (i) will be decided by a jury, (ii) are in early stages, (iii) involve uncertainty as to the likelihood of a class being certified or the ultimate size of the class, (iv) are subject to appeals or motions, (v) involve significant factual issues to be resolved, including with respect to the amount of damages, (vi) do not specify the amount of damages sought or (vii) seek very large damages based on novel and complex damage and liability legal theories. Accordingly, the Corporation cannot reasonably estimate the eventual outcome of these pending matters, the timing of their ultimate resolution or what the eventual loss, fines or penalties, if any, related to each pending matter will be.

In accordance with applicable accounting guidance, the Corporation records accruals for litigation and regulatory matters when those matters present loss contingencies that are both probable and reasonably estimable. When loss contingencies are not both probable and reasonably estimable, the Corporation does not record accruals. No material accruals have been recorded for pending litigation or threatened legal actions or regulatory matters.

For a limited number of matters for which a loss is reasonably possible in future periods, whether in excess of an accrued liability or where there is no accrued liability, the Corporation is able to estimate a range of possible loss. As of June 30, 2018, the Corporation has estimated the range of reasonably possible loss for these matters to be from zero to approximately \$20 million in the aggregate. The Corporation's estimate with respect to the aggregate range of reasonably possible loss is based upon currently available information and is subject to significant judgment and a variety of assumptions and known and unknown uncertainties. The matters underlying the estimated range will change from time to time, and actual results may vary significantly from the current estimate.

In certain other pending matters, there may be a range of reasonably possible loss (including reasonably possible loss in excess of amounts accrued) that cannot be reasonably estimated for the reasons described above. Such matters are not included in the estimated range of reasonably possible loss discussed above.

In 2015 Northern Trust Fiduciary Services (Guernsey) Limited (NTFS), an indirect subsidiary of the Corporation, was charged by a French investigating magistrate judge with complicity in estate tax fraud in connection with the administration of two trusts for which it serves as trustee. Charges also were brought against a number of other persons and entities related to this matter. In 2017 a French court found no estate tax fraud had occurred and NTFS and all other persons and entities charged were acquitted. The Public Prosecutor's Office of France appealed the court decision and in June 2018 a French appellate court issued its opinion on the matter, acquitting all persons and entities charged, including NTFS. The Public Prosecutor's Office of France has appealed the appellate court's decision to the Cour de Cassation, the highest court in France. A final schedule for the submission of briefs to

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

the Cour de Cassation has not yet been determined. As trustee, NTFS provided no tax advice and had no involvement in the preparation or filing of the challenged estate tax filings.

As previously disclosed, in the first quarter of 2018, Northern Trust received a document request from the U.S. Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC), Division of Enforcement, seeking the production of documents related to the Bank's activities as a swap dealer provisionally registered with the CFTC. Northern Trust is responding to the CFTC's document request. In addition, the National Futures Association (NFA) provided the Bank with a letter dated April 30, 2018, summarizing certain findings related to the Bank's swap dealer compliance program identified during a recently completed examination. Northern Trust is addressing the findings identified by the NFA in its examination and cooperating with both the NFA and the CFTC.

Visa Class B Common Shares. Northern Trust, as a member of Visa U.S.A. Inc. (Visa U.S.A.) and in connection with the 2007 restructuring of Visa U.S.A. and its affiliates and the 2008 initial public offering of Visa Inc. (Visa), received certain Visa Class B common shares. The Visa Class B common shares are subject to certain selling restrictions until the final resolution of certain litigation related to interchange fees involving Visa (the covered litigation), at which time the shares are convertible into Visa Class A common shares based on a conversion rate dependent upon the ultimate cost of resolving the covered litigation. On June 28, 2018, Visa deposited an additional \$600 million into the escrow account previously established with respect to the covered litigation. As a result, the rate at which Visa Class B common shares will convert into Visa Class A common shares was reduced. The ultimate resolution of the covered litigation, the timing for removal of the selling restrictions on the Visa Class B common shares and the rate at which such shares will ultimately convert into Visa Class A common shares are uncertain.

In June 2016 and 2015, Northern Trust recorded a \$123.1 million and \$99.9 million net gain on the sale of 1.1 million and 1.0 million of its Visa Class B common shares, respectively. These sales do not affect Northern Trust's risk related to the impact of the covered litigation or the rate at which such shares will ultimately convert into Visa Class A common shares. Northern Trust continued to hold approximately 4.1 million Visa Class B common shares, which are recorded at their original cost basis of zero, as of both June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Note 21 – Derivative Financial Instruments

Northern Trust is a party to various derivative financial instruments that are used in the normal course of business to meet the needs of its clients, as part of its trading activity for its own account and as part of its risk management activities. These instruments include foreign exchange contracts, interest rate contracts, total return swap contracts, and swaps related to the sale of certain Visa Class B common shares.

Foreign exchange contracts are agreements to exchange specific amounts of currencies at a future date, at a specified rate of exchange. Foreign exchange contracts are entered into primarily to meet the foreign exchange needs of clients. Foreign exchange contracts are also used for trading purposes and risk management. For risk management purposes, Northern Trust uses foreign exchange contracts to reduce its exposure to changes in foreign exchange rates relating to certain forecasted non-functional-currency-denominated revenue and expenditure transactions,

foreign-currency-denominated assets and liabilities, including investment securities, and net investments in non-U.S. affiliates.

Interest rate contracts include swap and option contracts. Interest rate swap contracts involve the exchange of fixed and floating rate interest payment obligations without the exchange of the underlying principal amounts. Northern Trust enters into interest rate swap contracts with its clients and also may utilize such contracts to reduce or eliminate the exposure to changes in the cash flows or fair value of hedged assets or liabilities due to changes in interest rates. Interest rate option contracts may include caps, floors, collars and swaptions, and provide for the transfer or reduction of interest rate risk, typically in exchange for a fee. Northern Trust enters into option contracts primarily as a seller of interest rate protection to clients. Northern Trust receives a fee at the outset of the agreement for the assumption of the risk of an unfavorable change in interest rates. This assumed interest rate risk is then mitigated by entering into an offsetting position with an outside counterparty. Northern Trust may also purchase or enter into option contracts for risk management purposes including to reduce the exposure to changes in the cash flows of hedged assets due to changes in interest rates.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following table shows the notional and fair values of all derivative financial instruments as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Table 63: Notional and Fair Values of Derivative Financial Instruments

| | June 30, 20 | 18 | | December 3 | 31, 2017 | |
|---|-------------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| | Notional | Fair Valu | ıe | Notional | Fair Valu | ie |
| (In Millions) | Value | Asset 1 | Liability 2 | Value | Asset 1 | Liability 2 |
| Derivatives Designated as Hedging under GAAP | | | | | | |
| Interest Rate Contracts | | | | | | |
| Fair Value Hedges | \$4,457.4 | \$33.3 | \$20.7 | \$4,473.1 | \$31.7 | \$18.2 |
| Cash Flow Hedges | 925.0 | 0.2 | 2.2 | 925.0 | 0.2 | 1.2 |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | | | | | | |
| Cash Flow Hedges | 3,196.8 | 60.2 | 7.5 | 3,289.0 | 28.4 | 13.0 |
| Net Investment Hedges | 2,914.2 | 191.3 | 0.9 | 3,011.3 | 0.6 | 179.5 |
| Total Derivatives Designated as Hedging under | \$11,493.4 | \$285.0 | \$31.3 | \$11,698.4 | \$60.9 | \$211.9 |
| GAAP | Ψ11,423.4 | Ψ203.0 | Ψ51.5 | Ψ11,070.4 | Ψ00.7 | Ψ211.) |
| | | | | | | |
| Derivatives Not Designated as Hedging under GAAP | | | | | | |
| Non-Designated Risk Management Derivatives | | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | \$139.5 | \$0.4 | \$0.9 | \$214.1 | \$1.1 | \$0.1 |
| Other Financial Derivatives ³ | 468.8 | | 36.7 | 404.7 | | 30.4 |
| Total Non-Designated Risk Management Derivatives | \$608.3 | \$0.4 | \$37.6 | \$618.8 | \$1.1 | \$30.5 |
| Client-Related and Trading Derivatives | | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | \$295,355.2 | \$3,056.9 | \$3,053.8 | \$317,882.5 | \$2,527.0 | \$2,522.5 |
| Interest Rate Contracts | 7,593.0 | 67.1 | 90.5 | 7,418.0 | 65.1 | 64.1 |
| Total Client-Related and Trading Derivatives | , | \$3,124.0 | \$3,144.3 | \$325,300.5 | \$2,592.1 | \$2,586.6 |
| | • | , | , | | , | • |
| Total Derivatives Not Designated as Hedging under | Ф202 <i>EEC E</i> | ¢2.124.4 | ¢2 101 0 | Ф225 Q1Q 2 | ¢2.502.2 | ¢2 (17 1 |
| GAAP | \$303,336.3 | \$3,124.4 | \$3,181.9 | \$325,919.3 | \$2,593.2 | \$2,617.1 |
| | | | | | | |
| Total Gross Derivatives | \$315,049.9 | \$3,409.4 | \$3,213.2 | \$337,617.7 | \$2,654.1 | \$2,829.0 |
| Less: Netting ⁴ | | 1,775.8 | 2,463.3 | | 1,860.0 | 1,621.4 |
| Total Derivative Financial Instruments | | \$1,633.6 | \$749.9 | | \$794.1 | \$1,207.6 |
| (1) Desirative exacts are remarked in other exacts on the | a aanaalidat | ad balana | sahaata | | | |

- (1) Derivative assets are reported in other assets on the consolidated balance sheets.
- (2) Derivative liabilities are reported in other liabilities on the consolidated balance sheets.
- (3) This line includes swaps related to sales of certain Visa Class B common shares and a total return swap contract.
- (4) See further detail in Note 22 Offsetting of Assets and Liabilities.

Notional amounts of derivative financial instruments do not represent credit risk, and are not recorded in the consolidated balance sheets. They are used merely to express the volume of this activity. Northern Trust's credit-related risk of loss is limited to the positive fair value of the derivative instrument, which is significantly less than the notional amount.

All derivative financial instruments, whether designated as hedges or not, are recorded on the consolidated balance sheets at fair value within other assets or other liabilities. Northern Trust has elected to net derivative assets and liabilities when legally enforceable master netting arrangements or similar agreements exist between Northern Trust and the counterparty.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Hedging Derivative Instruments Designated under GAAP. Northern Trust uses derivative instruments to hedge its exposure to foreign currency, interest rate, equity price, and credit risk. Certain hedging relationships are formally designated and qualify for hedge accounting under GAAP as fair value, cash flow or net investment hedges. Other derivatives that are entered into for risk management purposes as economic hedges are not formally designated as hedges and changes in fair value are recognized currently in other operating income (see below section "Derivative Instruments Not Designated as Hedging under GAAP").

In order to qualify for hedge accounting, a formal assessment is performed on a calendar-quarter basis to verify that derivatives used in designated hedging transactions continue to be highly effective in offsetting the changes in fair value or cash flows of the hedged item. If a derivative ceases to be highly effective, matures, is sold or is terminated, or if a hedged forecasted transaction is no longer probable of occurring, hedge accounting is terminated and the derivative is treated as if it were a trading instrument.

Fair Value Hedges. Derivatives are designated as fair value hedges to limit Northern Trust's exposure to changes in the fair value of assets and liabilities due to movements in interest rates. Northern Trust enters into interest rate swaps to hedge changes in fair value of available for sale debt securities and long-term subordinated debt. Northern Trust applied the "shortcut" method of accounting, available under GAAP, which assumes there is perfect effectiveness in a hedge, for all of its fair value hedges during the three- and six-month periods ended June 30, 2018 and 2017. Changes in the fair value of the derivative instrument and changes in the fair value of the hedged asset or liability attributable to the hedged risk are recognized currently in earnings within the same income statement line item.

Cash Flow Hedges. Derivatives are also designated as cash flow hedges in order to minimize the variability in cash flows of earning assets or forecasted transactions caused by movements in interest or foreign exchange rates. Northern Trust enters into foreign exchange contracts to hedge changes in cash flows due to movements in foreign exchange rates of forecasted foreign-currency-denominated transactions and foreign-currency-denominated debt securities. Northern Trust also enters into interest rate contracts to hedge changes in cash flows due to movements in interest rates of available for sale debt securities. The change in fair value of cash flow hedging derivative instruments are recorded in AOCI and reclassified to earnings when the hedged forecasted transaction impacts earnings within the same income statement line item.

There were no material gains or losses reclassified into earnings during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, as a result of the discontinuance of forecasted transactions that were no longer probable of occurring. It is estimated that net gains of \$0.4 million and \$0.6 million will be reclassified into net income within the next twelve months relating to cash flow hedges of foreign-currency-denominated transactions and cash flow hedges of foreign-currency-denominated that a net loss of \$0.9 million will be reclassified into net income upon the receipt of interest payments on earning assets within the next twelve months relating to cash flow hedges of available for sale debt securities. As of June 30, 2018, 23 months was the maximum length of time over which the exposure to variability in future cash flows of forecasted foreign-currency-denominated transactions was being hedged. There was no ineffectiveness recognized in earnings for cash flow hedges during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017.

Table of Contents

77

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following tables provide fair value and cash flow hedge derivative gains and losses recognized in income during the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Table 64: Location and Amount of Fair Value and Cash Flow Hedge Derivative Gains and Losses Recorded in Income

| | Location in Incom | n and Am ne | ount of I | Derivativ | e Gain/ | (Loss) | Recog | nized |
|---|-------------------|----------------|---------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| (In Millions) | Interest | Income | Interest Expense | 2 | Other Opera Incom | ting | Other Opera Exper | ting |
| Three Months Ended June 30, | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 |
| Total amounts on the consolidated statements of income | \$567.7 | \$417.2 | \$154.4 | \$75.7 | \$31.4 | \$43.0 | \$75.3 | \$82.3 |
| Gains/(Losses) on fair value hedges recognized on Interest Rate Contracts | | | | | | | | |
| Recognized on derivatives | 10.4 | (24.6) | (15.2) | (5.3) | | | _ | |
| Recognized on hedged items | (10.4) | 24.6 | 15.2 | 5.3 | | — | — | |
| Amounts related to interest settlements on derivatives | 6.6 | 1.5 | 8.3 | 15.2 | | | | |
| Total gain/(loss) recognized on fair value hedges | \$6.6 | \$1.5 | \$8.3 | \$15.2 | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — | \$ — |
| Gains/(Losses) on cash flow hedges recognized on Foreign Exchange Contracts | | | | | | | | |
| Net gain/(loss) reclassified from AOCI to net income Interest Rate Contracts | 16.0 | 3.5 | | | 1.1 | 1.8 | _ | _ |
| Net gain/(loss) reclassified from AOCI to net income | ` / | 0.1 | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ | _ |
| Total gain/(loss) reclassified from AOCI to net income on cash flow hedges | \$15.9 | \$3.6 | \$— | \$— | \$1.1 | \$1.8 | \$— | \$— |

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

| eratin | ng |
|--------|-----|
| 2017 | |
| §147.4 | 4 |
| | |
| | |
| _ | |
| _ | |
| | |
| S— | |
| | |
| | |
| 0.1 |) |
| | |
| _ | |
| 5(0.1 |) |
| | 017 |

The following table provides the impact of fair value hedge accounting on the carrying value of the designated hedged items as of June 30, 2018.

Table 65: Hedged Items in Fair Value Hedges

| | June 30, 2 | 2018 |
|--|--|--|
| (In Millions) | Carrying Value of the Hedged Items | Cumulative Hedge Accounting Basis Adjustment |
| Available for Sale Debt Securities (2) | \$4,038.6 | \$ 149.8 |
| Senior Notes and Long-Term Subordinated Debt | 1,049.4 | 1.9 |

- (1) There are no amounts related to discontinued hedging relationships.
- (2) Carrying value represents amortized cost.

Net Investment Hedges. Certain foreign exchange contracts are designated as net investment hedges to minimize Northern Trust's exposure to variability in the foreign currency translation of net investments in non-U.S. branches and subsidiaries. For net investment hedges, there was no ineffectiveness recorded during the three and six months ended June 30, 2017. Net investment hedge gains of \$157.7 million and losses of \$102.0 million were recognized in AOCI related to foreign exchange contracts for the three months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively. Net investment hedge gains of \$83.4 million and losses of \$132.4 million were recognized in AOCI related to foreign exchange contracts for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Derivative Instruments Not Designated as Hedging under GAAP. Northern Trust's derivative instruments that are not designated as hedging under GAAP include derivatives for purposes of client-related and trading activities, as well as other risk management purposes. These activities consist principally of providing foreign exchange services to clients in connection with Northern Trust's global custody business. However, in the normal course of business, Northern Trust also engages in trading of currencies for its own account.

Non-designated risk management derivatives include foreign exchange contracts entered into to manage the foreign currency risk of non-U.S.-dollar-denominated assets and liabilities, the net investment in certain non-U.S. affiliates, commercial loans and forecasted foreign-currency-denominated transactions. Swaps related to sales of certain Visa Class B common shares were entered into pursuant to which Northern Trust retains the risks associated with the ultimate conversion of the Visa Class B common shares into Visa Class A common shares. Total return swaps are entered into to manage the equity price risk associated with certain investments.

Changes in the fair value of derivative instruments not designated as hedges under GAAP are recognized currently in income. The following table provides the location and amount of gains and losses recorded in the consolidated statements of income for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017.

Table 66: Location and Amount of Gains and Losses Recorded in Income for Derivatives Not Designated as Hedging Under GAAP

| | Location of Derivative Gain / (Loss) | Amount (Loss) Recogni | | vative Ga | ain / | |
|--|---|-----------------------------|--------|----------------------|---------|---|
| (In Millions) | Recognized in Income | Three M | Ionths | Six Mor Ended J | | |
| Non-designated risk management derivatives | | 2018 | 2017 | 2018 | 2017 | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts | Other Operating Income | \$(5.4) | | \$(1.3) | | , |
| Other Financial Derivatives ⁽¹⁾ Gains/(Losses) from non-designated risk | Other Operating Income | \$(13.2) | , | (11.8) \$(13.1) | • |) |
| management derivatives | | ψ(13.2) | Ψ3.0 | φ(13.1) | Ψ3.7 | |
| Client-related and trading derivatives Foreign Exchange Contracts | Foreign Exchange Trading Income | e78.9 | 49.9 | 157.4 | 98.0 | |
| Interest Rate Contracts | Security Commissions and Trading Income | 2.9 | 4.4 | 4.6 | 5.6 | |
| Gains/(Losses) from client-related and trading derivatives | Trading mediae | \$81.8 | \$54.3 | \$162.0 | \$103.6 | 5 |
| Total gains/(losses) from derivatives not designated as hedging under GAAP | | \$68.6 | \$59.3 | \$148.9 | \$107.3 | 3 |

⁽¹⁾ This line includes swaps related to sales of certain Visa Class B common shares and total return swap contracts.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

Note 22 – Offsetting of Assets and Liabilities

Northern Trust has elected to net derivative assets and liabilities when legally enforceable master netting arrangements or similar agreements exist between Northern Trust and the counterparty.

The following tables provide information regarding the offsetting of derivative assets and securities purchased under agreements to resell within the consolidated balance sheets as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Gross

Net

Gross

Table 67: Offsetting of Derivative Assets and Securities Purchased Under Agreements to Resell June 30, 2018

| (In Millions) | Gross Recognized Assets | | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Net Amount (3) |
|---|--|---|---|--|---|
| Derivative Assets (1) | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts Over the Counter (OTC) | \$ 2,412.2 | \$1,436.9 | \$975.3 | \$ 143.8 | \$ 831.5 |
| Interest Rate Swaps OTC | 92.4 | 14.3 | 78.1 | | 78.1 |
| Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared | 8.2 | 8.2 | _ | _ | |
| Other Financial Derivatives | 0.1 | _ | 0.1 | | 0.1 |
| Cross Product Netting Adjustment | _ | 18.3 | _ | | |
| Cross Product Collateral Adjustment | | 298.1 | | | |
| Total Derivatives Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement | 2,512.9 | 1,775.8 | 737.1 | 143.8 | 593.3 |
| Total Derivatives Not Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement | 896.5 | _ | 896.5 | 18.9 | 877.6 |
| Total Derivatives | 3,409.4 | 1,775.8 | 1,633.6 | 162.7 | 1,470.9 |
| Securities Purchased under Agreements to Resell (2) | \$ 1,417.8 | \$— | \$1,417.8 | \$ 1,417.8 | \$ — |
| <u> </u> | Ψ 1, +17.0 | ψ— | ψ1, τ17.0 | ψ 1, τ17.0 | Ψ — |
| December 31, 2017 | | | | | |
| December 31, 2017 (In Millions) | Gross Recognized Assets | | Net Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet | Gross Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Net Amount (3) |
| | Recognized | Amounts Offset in the Balance | Amounts Presented in the Balance | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance | |
| (In Millions) Derivative Assets (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC | Recognized | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$708.6 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance | Amount (3) \$ 706.5 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Assets (1) | Recognized Assets | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amount (3) |
| (In Millions) Derivative Assets (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC | Recognized Assets \$ 2,106.3 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$708.6 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amount (3) \$ 706.5 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Assets (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Cross Product Netting Adjustment | Recognized Assets \$ 2,106.3 86.9 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 10.4 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$708.6 72.7 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amount (3) \$ 706.5 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Assets (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Cross Product Netting Adjustment Cross Product Collateral Adjustment | Recognized Assets \$ 2,106.3 86.9 10.1 — | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 708.6 72.7 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet \$ 2.1 | Amount (3) \$ 706.5 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Assets (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Cross Product Netting Adjustment Cross Product Collateral Adjustment Total Derivatives Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement | Recognized Assets \$ 2,106.3 86.9 10.1 — | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 10.4 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 708.6 72.7 — | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amount (3) \$ 706.5 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Assets (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Cross Product Netting Adjustment Cross Product Collateral Adjustment Total Derivatives Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement Total Derivatives Not Subject to a Master Netting | Recognized Assets \$ 2,106.3 86.9 10.1 — | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 10.4 427.6 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 708.6 72.7 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet \$ 2.1 | \$ 706.5 72.7 — |
| (In Millions) Derivative Assets (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Cross Product Netting Adjustment Cross Product Collateral Adjustment Total Derivatives Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement Total Derivatives Not Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement | Recognized Assets \$ 2,106.3 86.9 10.1 2,203.3 450.8 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 10.4 427.6 1,860.0 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 708.6 72.7 — — 343.3 450.8 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet \$ 2.1 2.1 2.5 | \$ 706.5 72.7 — 341.2 448.3 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Assets (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Cross Product Netting Adjustment Cross Product Collateral Adjustment Total Derivatives Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement Total Derivatives Not Subject to a Master Netting | Recognized Assets \$ 2,106.3 86.9 10.1 — 2,203.3 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 10.4 427.6 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$708.6 72.7 343.3 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet \$ 2.1 2.1 2.5 4.6 | \$ 706.5 72.7 — — 341.2 |

Derivative assets are reported in other assets in the consolidated balance sheets. Other assets (excluding derivative assets) totaled \$4.7 billion and \$3.9 billion as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

Securities purchased under agreements to resell are reported in federal funds sold and securities purchased under

⁽²⁾ agreements to resell in the consolidated balance sheets. Federal funds sold totaled \$10.0 million and \$21.0 million as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively.

Northern Trust did not possess any cash collateral that was not offset in the consolidated balance sheets that could have been used to offset the net amounts presented in the consolidated balance sheets as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

The following tables provide information regarding the offsetting of derivative liabilities and securities sold under agreements to repurchase within the consolidated balance sheets as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017. Table 68: Offsetting of Derivative Liabilities and Securities Sold Under Agreements to Repurchase June 30, 2018

Gross

Net

Gross

| (In Millions) | Gross Recognized Liabilities | | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Net Amount (2) |
|--|---|--|---|--|---|
| Derivative Liabilities (1) | | | | | |
| Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC | \$ 2,567.1 | \$1,436.9 | \$1,130.2 | \$ 3.2 | \$ 1,127.0 |
| Interest Rate Swaps OTC | 104.0 | 14.3 | 89.7 | _ | 89.7 |
| Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared | 9.4 | 8.2 | 1.2 | _ | 1.2 |
| Other Financial Derivatives | 36.7 | _ | 36.7 | _ | 36.7 |
| Cross Product Netting Adjustment | | 18.3 | | | _ |
| Cross Product Collateral Adjustment | | 985.6 | | | _ |
| Total Derivatives Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement | 2,717.2 | 2,463.3 | 253.9 | 3.2 | 250.7 |
| Total Derivatives Not Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement | 496.0 | _ | 496.0 | 0.2 | 495.8 |
| Total Derivatives | 3,213.2 | 2,463.3 | 749.9 | 3.4 | 746.5 |
| Securities Sold under Agreements to Repurchase | \$ 981.3 | \$— | \$981.3 | \$ 981.3 | \$— |
| December 31, 2017 | Ψ 701.5 | Ψ | Ψ / 01.5 | Ψ 701.5 | Ψ |
| | | | | | |
| (In Millions) | Gross Recognized Liabilities | Offset in | Net Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet | Gross Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Net Amount (2) |
| | Recognized | Amounts Offset in the Balance | Amounts Presented in the Balance | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance | |
| (In Millions) | Recognized | Amounts Offset in the Balance | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance | |
| (In Millions) Derivative Liabilities (1) | Recognized Liabilities | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amount (2) |
| (In Millions) Derivative Liabilities (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC | Recognized Liabilities \$ 1,889.2 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 491.5 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amount (2) \$ 491.5 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Liabilities (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC | Recognized Liabilities \$ 1,889.2 69.2 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 491.5 55.0 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amount (2) \$ 491.5 55.0 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Liabilities (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared | Recognized Liabilities \$ 1,889.2 69.2 14.3 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amount (2) \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Liabilities (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Other Financial Derivatives | Recognized Liabilities \$ 1,889.2 69.2 14.3 30.4 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 — | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 30.4 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 30.4 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Liabilities (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Other Financial Derivatives Cross Product Netting Adjustment | Recognized Liabilities \$ 1,889.2 69.2 14.3 30.4 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 — 10.4 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 30.4 — | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | Amount (2) \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 30.4 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Liabilities (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Other Financial Derivatives Cross Product Netting Adjustment Cross Product Collateral Adjustment Total Derivatives Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement Total Derivatives Not Subject to a Master Netting | \$ 1,889.2 69.2 14.3 30.4 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 — 10.4 189.0 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 30.4 — | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 30.4 |
| (In Millions) Derivative Liabilities (1) Foreign Exchange Contracts OTC Interest Rate Swaps OTC Interest Rate Swaps Exchange Cleared Other Financial Derivatives Cross Product Netting Adjustment Cross Product Collateral Adjustment Total Derivatives Subject to a Master Netting Arrangement | \$ 1,889.2 69.2 14.3 30.4 — 2,003.1 | Amounts Offset in the Balance Sheet \$1,397.7 14.2 10.1 — 10.4 189.0 | Amounts Presented in the Balance Sheet \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 30.4 381.7 | Amounts Not Offset in the Balance Sheet | \$ 491.5 55.0 4.2 30.4 — 381.7 |

⁽¹⁾ Derivative liabilities are reported in other liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets. Other liabilities (excluding derivative liabilities) totaled \$2.4 billion as of both June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

All of Northern Trust's securities sold under agreements to repurchase (repurchase agreements) and securities purchased under agreements to resell (reverse repurchase agreements) involve the transfer of financial assets in

Northern Trust did not place any cash collateral with counterparties that was not offset in the consolidated balance

⁽²⁾ sheets that could have been used to offset the net amounts presented in the consolidated balance sheets as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017.

exchange for cash subject to a right and obligation to repurchase those assets for an agreed upon amount. In the event of a repurchase failure, the cash or financial assets are available for offset. All of Northern Trust's repurchase agreements and reverse repurchase agreements are subject to a master netting arrangement, which sets forth the rights and obligations for repurchase and offset. Under the master netting

Table of Contents

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements (unaudited) (continued)

arrangement, Northern Trust is entitled to offset receivables from and collateral placed with a single counterparty against obligations owed to that counterparty. In addition, collateral held by Northern Trust can be offset against receivables from that counterparty. However, Northern Trust's repurchase agreements and reverse repurchase agreements do not meet the requirements to net.

Derivative asset and liability positions with a single counterparty can be offset against each other in cases where legally enforceable master netting arrangements or similar agreements exist. Derivative assets and liabilities can be further offset by cash collateral received from, and deposited with, the transacting counterparty. The basis for this view is that, upon termination of transactions subject to a master netting arrangement or similar agreement, the individual derivative receivables do not represent resources to which general creditors have rights and individual derivative payables do not represent claims that are equivalent to the claims of general creditors.

Credit risk associated with derivative instruments relates to the failure of the counterparty and the failure of Northern Trust to pay based on the contractual terms of the agreement, and is generally limited to the unrealized fair value gains and losses on these instruments, net of any collateral received or deposited. The amount of credit risk will increase or decrease during the lives of the instruments as interest rates, foreign exchange rates, equity prices or other underlying exposures fluctuate. Northern Trust's risk is controlled by limiting such activity to an approved list of counterparties and by subjecting such activity to the same credit and quality controls as are followed in lending and investment activities. Credit Support Annexes and other similar agreements are currently in place with a number of Northern Trust's counterparties which mitigate the aforementioned credit risk associated with derivative activity conducted with those counterparties by requiring that significant net unrealized fair value gains be supported by collateral placed with Northern Trust.

Additional cash collateral received from and deposited with derivative counterparties totaling \$113.2 million and \$386.5 million, respectively, as of June 30, 2018, and \$67.0 million and \$143.1 million, respectively, as of December 31, 2017, was not offset against derivative assets and liabilities in the consolidated balance sheets as the amounts exceeded the net derivative positions with those counterparties.

Certain master netting arrangements Northern Trust enters into with derivative counterparties contain credit-risk-related contingent features in which the counterparty has the option to declare Northern Trust in default and accelerate cash settlement of net derivative liabilities with the counterparty in the event Northern Trust's credit rating falls below specified levels. The aggregate fair value of all derivative instruments with credit-risk-related contingent features that were in a liability position was \$506.5 million and \$223.7 million at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, respectively. Cash collateral amounts deposited with derivative counterparties on those dates included \$498.4 million and \$35.8 million, respectively, posted against these liabilities, resulting in a net maximum amount of termination payments that could have been required at June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, of \$8.1 million and \$187.9 million, respectively. Accelerated settlement of these liabilities would not have a material effect on the consolidated financial position or liquidity of Northern Trust.

Item 4. Controls and Procedures

As of June 30, 2018, the Corporation's management, with the participation of the Corporation's Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, evaluated the effectiveness of the Corporation's disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the Exchange Act)), that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Corporation in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified by the SEC's rules and forms. Based on such evaluation, such officers have concluded that, as of June 30, 2018, the Corporation's disclosure controls and procedures are effective.

There have been no changes in the Corporation's internal control over financial reporting identified in connection with the evaluation required by Rules 13a-15 and 15d-15 under the Exchange Act during the last fiscal quarter that have materially affected, or that are reasonably likely to materially affect, the Corporation's internal control over financial reporting.

Table of Contents

PART II — OTHER INFORMATION

Item 1. Legal Proceedings

The information presented under the caption "Legal Proceedings" in "Note 20 — Contingent Liabilities" included under Part I, Item 1 of this Form 10-Q is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 2. Unregistered Sales of Equity Securities and Use of Proceeds

(c) The following table shows certain information relating to the Corporation's purchases of common stock for the three months ended June 30, 2018.

Table 69: Repurchases of Common Stock

| Period | | Average Price Paid | | Maximum Number of |
|------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| | | | Shares Purchased | Shares that May Yet |
| | | | as Part of a Publicly | Be Purchased |
| | | | Announced Plan (1) | Under the Plan |
| April 1 - 30, 2018 | 264,971 | \$ 107.56 | 264,971 | 3,942,599 |
| May 1 - 31, 2018 | 977,857 | 106.87 | 977,857 | 2,964,742 |
| June 1 - 30, 2018 | 538,887 | 105.77 | 538,887 | 2,425,855 |
| Total (Second Quarter) | 1,781,715 | \$ 106.64 | 1,781,715 | 2,425,855 |

Repurchases were made pursuant to the repurchase program announced by the Corporation on July 18, 2017, under which the Corporation's Board of Directors authorized the Corporation to repurchase up to 9.5 million shares of the Corporation's common stock. On July 17, 2018, this program was terminated and replaced with a new repurchase program, under which the Corporation's Board of Directors authorized the Corporation to repurchase up to 25.0 million shares of the Corporation's common stock. The new repurchase program has no expiration date.

Item 6. Exhibits

A list of exhibits to this Form 10-Q is set forth on the Exhibit Index immediately preceding such exhibits and is incorporated herein by reference.

Table of Contents

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned thereunto duly authorized.

NORTHERN TRUST CORPORATION (Registrant)

Date: July 30, 2018 By:/s/ S. Biff Bowman

S. Biff Bowman

Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer)

Date: July 30, 2018 By:/s/ Aileen B. Blake

Aileen B. Blake

Executive Vice President and Controller

(Principal Accounting Officer)

Table of Contents

| EXHIBIT INDEX |
|----------------------------|
| Exhibit D |
| Exhibit Number Description |

- Certain instruments defining the rights of the holders of long-term debt of the Corporation and certain of its subsidiaries, none of which authorize a total amount of indebtedness in excess of 10% of the total assets of the Corporation and its subsidiaries on a consolidated basis, have not been filed as exhibits. The Corporation hereby agrees to furnish a copy of any of these agreements to the SEC upon request.
- 31.1 Rule 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a) Certification of CEO Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002
- 31.2 Rule 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a) Certification of CFO Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002
- 32 Certifications of CEO and CFO Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002

Includes the following financial and related information from Northern Trust's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q as of and for the quarter ended June 30, 2018, formatted in Extensible Business Reporting Language (XBRL): (1) the Consolidated Balance Sheets as of June 30, 2018 and December 31, 2017, (2) the Consolidated Statements of Income for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, (3) the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the three and six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, (4) the Consolidated Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, (5) the Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the six months ended June 30, 2018 and 2017, and (6) Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

85